

CONNECT

Plus

By a group of supervisors

الفصل الدراسي الأول

الصف السادس الابتدائي

للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات

طبعة
جديدة
طبقاً لأحدث تعديلات
كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٥

تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلي



6th
Primary
2025

FIRST TERM

Specifications for SIXTH Year Primary (1st Term)

English Examination (2024 - 2025)

مواصفات ورقة امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف السادس الإبتدائي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤ / ٢٠٢٥

Time : Two Hours 2024 / 2025 30 Marks

A Listening [6 Marks]

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : [6 Marks]

An unseen listening text of about **SEVENTY [70]** words at the appropriate difficulty level for primary SIX followed by **FOUR [4]** MCQs with **FOUR [4]** options each is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and choose the correct answer from the **FOUR** options given.

[One mark and a half each]

B Reading [13 Marks]

2 Read and complete the text/dialogue with the words from the box: [4 Marks]

An unseen text from **EIGHTY [80]** to **NINETY [90]** words OR a dialogue of **FOUR [4]** exchanges with **Four [4]** deletions is provided. A list of **FIVE [5]** separate words related to vocabulary is also given. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text or the dialogue with **ONE** of the **FIVE [5]** words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

[One mark each]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: [5 Marks]

An unseen literary or informational text from **ONE HUNDRED [100]** to **ONE HUNDRED TWENTY [120]** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **SIX**. Learners are asked to answer :

THREE [3] MCQs with **FOUR [4]** options each dealing with the following reading comprehension skills : [One mark each]

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

TWO [2] open ended questions dealing with **TWO** of the following reading comprehension skills : [One mark each]

- Describe the relationship between a series of historical events, scientific ideas or concepts, or steps in technical procedures in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Compare and contrast the most important points and key details presented in a text.

- Determine the central message, lesson, or moral and explain how it is conveyed through key details in the text.

The Reader [4 Marks]

4 A. Read and write YES or NO : [2 Marks]

FOUR [4] sentences related to the Reader are provided. Learners are asked to read the sentences and write **[YES]** or **[NO]** in front of each sentence. The sentences should test learners' knowledge of vocabulary, events, characters and setting of the Reader. *[Half a mark each]*

B. Read and answer the questions : [2 Marks]

TWO open ended questions are provided. Learners are asked to answer the questions given. The questions should test learners' knowledge of events, characters in the Reader. *[One mark each]*

C Writing [11 Marks]

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: [3 Marks]

SIX [6] MCQs based on **structure** are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer out of the **FOUR [4]** options given. *[Half a mark each]*

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences : [3 Marks]

Learners are given **THREE [3]** sentences of not less than **SIX [6]** words each [affirmative, negative & interrogative]. The words of each sentence are scrambled. Learners are asked to put the words in order to make a correct sentence. *[One mark each]*

7 Write a text of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements : [5 Marks]

Learners are asked to write [a paragraph/email/personal profile/ a report/a short story] of about **SEVENTY [70]** words using the given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file [including questions only] etc.

[Two marks for relevance of ideas and vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar]

CONTENTS

▶ **THEME 1** | I discover myself

Unit 1 : Express yourself !	12
Unit 2 : Home is where the heart is	47
Review 1	85

▶ **THEME 2** | Myself and others

Unit 3 : School time!	90
Unit 4 : We can make a difference !	130
Review 2	165
• Monthly Assessments	169

Non-Fiction Reader:

Hassan Fathy : A biography	173
----------------------------------	-----

Fiction Reader:

A wonderful surprise	177
----------------------------	-----

▶ Listening Texts	195
--------------------------------	-----

▶ Answers of Topics	199
----------------------------------	-----

▶ Translation of Listening & Reading Texts	204
---	-----

علامة SB تشير إلى أسئلة كتاب المدرسة



THEME

1

I discover myself



Express
yourself!

عبر عن نفسك!

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الأولى : Aims of Unit One :

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- talk about different creative activities.
- أتحدث عن أنشطة إبداعية مختلفة.
- understand and use the zero conditional.
- أفهم وأستخدم الحالة الصفرية.
- listen to and understand an interview.
- أستمع وأفهم مقابلة شخصية.
- understand and use prepositional phrases.
- أفهم وأستخدم ثبته الجملة.
- read and understand a poem.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصيدة.
- read and understand an article.
- أقرأ وأفهم مقال.
- write a report using time clauses and sequencing.
- أكتب تقرير مستخدماً الروابط الزمنية وتسلسل الأحداث.
- read and understand a story.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصة.





I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

creative	مبدع - إبداعي	clay	طين خزفي - صلصال
creativity	إبداع	design	تصميم - يصمم
exhibition	معرض - عرض	beads	حبات الخرز
junk modeling	تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة	sculpture	فن النحت - تمثال منحوت
collage	صناعة الأعمال الفنية من الملصقات	outdoor art	الفن الخارجي
pottery	فن صناعة الأواني الفخارية	computer animation	الرسوم المتحركة الحاسوبية
messy	فوضوي - غير مرتب	uncomfortable	غير مريح
skills	مهارات		

• Extra vocabulary

competition	مسابقة - منافسة	temporary	مؤقت
painting	لوحة زيتية مرسومة - تلوين	artist	فنان
appear	يظهر	rope	حبل
shells	أصداف	luckily	لحسن الحظ
fabric	نسيج - قماش	poem	قصيدة
cardboard	ورق مقوى	suppose	يفترض
lid	غطاء	agree	يوافق
material	مادة خام	gallery	معرض
paint	دهان - طلاء - يلون	create	يبدع - يبتكر
bracelet	أسورة	cloth	قماش
jewelry	مجوهرات	activities	أنشطة
disappear	يختفي	recycle	يعيد تدوير

• Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
show يُبيّن - يعرض	showed	shown
send يرسل	sent	sent
build يبني - يشيد	built	built
hear يسمع	heard	heard
feel يشعر	felt	felt
leave يغادر	left	left

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
messy	not clean or tidy
disappear	to go away; you can't see it any more
uncomfortable	not feeling nice on your skin
relaxing	making you happy and not worried

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

focus on	يركز على	get wet	يبتل
enter a competition	يدخل مسابقة	recycle paper	يعيد تدوير الورق
to get you excited !	تجعلك متحمس !	go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية
recycled cloth	قماش معاد تدويره	do a creative project	يقوم بمشروع إبداعي
save money	يدخر المال	go away	يرحل - يبتعد
a bit of	قليلاً من		



Pop Quiz

on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لاتقان المفردات اللغوية



► **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- This competition is for children between the of five and fifteen years.
a. ropes b. heights c. ages d. weights
- If you design clothes, you can save money by using recycled
a. paper b. copper c. clay d. cloth
- To make jewelry, you can use different colored
a. pens b. rulers c. beads d. erasers
- You could use plastic bottles or in junk modeling.
a. cardboard b. clouds c. sunlight d. food
- He is the who creates beautiful outdoor art.
a. vet b. artist c. doctor d. farmer
- I want to enter a about creative projects.
a. hotel b. competition c. kitchen d. restaurant
- My favorite is making pottery.
a. food b. activity c. subject d. sport
- Fareeda is going to make a/an of a cat with clay.
a. jewelry b. animation c. sculpture d. clock
- When something is , it's not clean or tidy.
a. calm b. messy c. clear d. quiet
- To means to go away.
a. watch b. appear c. disappear d. enter

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Show your creativity	exhibition	Creative works appear in the art exhibitions.
	express	There are many different ways to express yourself.
	junk modeling	You could use plastic bottles or cardboard in junk modeling.
	recycled cloth	Use recycled cloth to save money and help the planet.
	collage	You can make a beautiful collage with a bit of everything.
	beads	Colored beads are used to make beautiful jewelry.
	sculpture	We can use clay or stone to make sculptures.
Painting	animation	You could use a computer or a phone to make an animation.
	competition	Creative projects can enter competitions.
	favorite	My favorite activity is painting.
	relaxing	I like pottery. I think it's relaxing.
	disappear	The paint disappears quickly when I wash them.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Lesson 1

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Show your creativity !

Enter our fun new competition and show us how creative you are! We want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send us their creative work. Your work will appear in a big art exhibition in the city museum. There are so many different ways you can express yourself. You could send us a painting, a photo, a poem, or a story. Or why not try something new? Here are some ideas for different creative activities to get you excited!

Junk modeling

What can you make with a cardboard box? Plastic bottles and lids? Try junk modeling! Use your creative and design skills to build a rocket, a ship, a car, or a house.

Pottery

Do you like getting your hands messy? Then try pottery! Use clay to make a bowl, a cup, or a vase.

Designing clothes

If you can't find anything you want to wear, how about designing and making your own clothes? You can use recycled cloth to save money and help the planet.

Making a collage

If you can't decide what to use in your project, use a bit of everything! You could make a beautiful collage with material, paint, and colored paper.

Making jewelry

Use beads to make beautiful jewelry, for example, necklaces or bracelets.

Sculpture

You could use wood, clay, or stone to make a sculpture of an animal, a person, or a completely new shape.

Outdoor art

Use the things you find around you in the outside world, for example, leaves or shells to make some outdoor art.

Computer animation

If you prefer using technology, you could use your computer skills to make an animation. Moving pictures can tell a great story!

There are so many things you can do! How do you like to express yourself ?

Lesson 2

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Noha : Have you heard about this competition, Hesham ? It's for any kind of creative project. I'd like to enter.

Hesham : Oh wow, that looks good. What are you going to make ?

Noha : I don't know. My favorite activity is painting. I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

Hesham : Hmm. If I paint, I don't feel happy. I'm not very good at it!

Noha : Yes, you are! Anyway, no one is bad at a creative project. You can do or make anything you like. There's no right or wrong!

Hesham : I prefer making things with my hands. I like sculpture or junk modeling, but my favorite is pottery. I think it's really relaxing!

Noha : Oh, I don't agree. I don't like pottery because I don't like getting my hands messy. I think it's really uncomfortable to have clay on my hands.

Hesham : But if you paint, you get paint on your hands.

Noha : Well, yes, I suppose you're right. Luckily, the paint disappears quickly when I wash them!



III Language

1 Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

► **Uses :** الاستخدام

A. We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are true for us :

نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق وأشياء حقيقية بالنسبة لنا :

► **Formation :** التكوين

We form it using if or when, and the present simple or a modal like can :
يتم صياغة الحالة الصفرية باستخدام when/if وزمن المضارع البسيط أو فعل ناقص مثل can :

Statement

الجملة الخبرية

→ **If / When + present simple , ... present simple / can + inf.**

ex. - If / When you paint, you get paint on your hands.
- If I go to bed late, I can't wake up in the morning.

B. We also use the zero conditional to give instructions or make suggestions. To do this, we form it using if / when, and the imperative :
يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الحالة الصفرية لإعطاء التعليمات أو تقديم اقتراحات. وللقيام بذلك، نستخدم if/when وصيغة الأمر :

If / When + مضارع بسيط , imperative .
صيغة الامر

ex. - If it starts to rain, use an umbrella.
- When you arrive at school, come to the classroom.

Wh- Q.

السؤال بـ [أداة
استفهام]

→ **Q.W. + do / does + subj. + inf. + if / when + ... مضارع بسيط ?**

ex. - What do you do if/ when you feel sad?
= If/When you feel sad, what do you do?



Pop Quiz

on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I feel excited when I the science museum.
a. visited b. visiting c. visit d. visits
- If you mix yellow and red, you orange.
a. made b. makes c. making d. make
- If you want to get up early, the alarm.
a. to set b. setting c. set d. sets
- When the sun, the plants make their food.
a. rise b. rises c. rising d. to rise

5. If you heat butter, it
a. melting b. melt c. melts d. melted
6. The pot breaks you drop it on the floor.
a. but b. if c. so d. while
7. When you go to the beach, a sunhat.
a. taking b. take c. takes d. took
8. My father angry when I arrive home late.
a. get b. got c. gets d. getting
9. What you do if you feel sad ?
a. did b. are c. do d. were
10. When she carefully to the teacher, she understands.
a. listens b. listening c. listened d. listen
11. If you hard, you can get good grades.
a. studies b. study c. studying d. studied
12. If you want to succeed, hard.
a. studies b. studying c. study d. studied
13. I always take my umbrella when it
a. rain b. rains c. raining d. rained
14. How do you feel when you to school ?
a. going b. to go c. goes d. go
15. If I a toothache, I can go to the dentist.
a. have b. has c. having d. had
16. When you visit the museum, you can photos.
a. take b. takes c. took d. taking
17. You can't early if you take the bus.
a. arrives b. arrived c. arriving d. arrive

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



1. If I [be] tired, I go to bed early.
2. If your sister is sad, [talking] to her.
3. If I [did] something creative, I feel happy.
4. When you [heats] water, it boils.
5. [Where] it rains, we can't play outside.
6. Plants die if you [not] water them.
7. When he walks in the park, he [could] feel relaxed.
8. If she [be] worried, she asks her parents for help.
9. When it [be] windy, they don't go outdoors.
10. When I don't tell the truth, my parents [punished] me.

Test 1

on Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة]

• **1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. Noha and Hesham are talking about a
a. competition b. race c. play d. newspaper
2. They want to a creative project competition.
a. design b. enter c. leave d. deliver
3. Noha's favorite activity is
a. junk modeling b. designing clothes
c. painting d. singing
4. Hesham prefers making things with his
a. computer b. hands c. friends d. tools

• **2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.**

exhibition – creative – painting – express – market

Enter our fun new competition and show us how creative you are! We want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send us their [1] work. Your work will appear in a big art [2] in the city museum. There are so many different ways you can [3] yourself. You could send us a [4], a photo, a poem, a story or you can try something new.

• **3 Read the following text and then answer the questions.**

There are different competitions from time to time. Nowadays, there is a competition to show how creative children are! They want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send their creative works. Their works will appear in a big art exhibition in the city museum. There are so many different ways children can express themselves. They could send a painting, a photo, a poem, a story, or any other creative works.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about "".
a. Children b. A competition c. City museums d. A story
2. Their works will appear in a big art exhibition in the city
a. square b. museum c. hall d. house
3. The underlined word "express" means to
a. represent b. listen c. talk d. hide

B. Answer the following questions.

4. How old are the children they want ?

.....

5. How can children express themselves ?

.....

(Cairo – Al-Khalifa and Mokattam 2024)

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If we freeze water, it to ice.

- a. turned b. turn c. turns d. turning

2. When you feel tired, to bed.

- a. go b. goes c. to go d. going

3. My teacher gets angry when I do my homework.

- a. didn't b. don't c. doesn't d. isn't

4. Snakes bite when they afraid.

- a. was b. were c. are d. is

5. What do we get when we red and blue ?

- a. mixes b. mix c. mixed d. mixing

6. We go to the beach when it hot.

- a. is b. was c. will d. are

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. an – art – There – exhibition – Sunday – is – on.

.....

2. favorite – junk – My – modeling – is – activity.

.....

3. with – you – can – lids – What – make ?

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A competition"

Guiding elements:

- take part in • junk modeling • recycled • art exhibition

.....

.....



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

shout	يصيح - يصرخ	flash	وميض - ومضة	reflect	يعكس
cheer	يهتف - يشجع	jewels	جواهر	pattern	نمط - شكل
breath	نفس	sculptor	نحات	sight	منظر - مشهد
brilliantly	بتألق	spheres	أجسام كروية	theater	مسرح
bang = blast	فرقعة - انفجار	bubbles	فقاعات	explode	ينفجر
verse	بيت [من الشعر]	bright	لامع		

• Extra vocabulary

noisily	بضجيج / بصخب / بضوضاء	public	عام	cooking pots	أواني الطهي
fire	حريق	float	يطفو	metal	معدن
concert	حفل موسيقى	shiny	لامع	stick	عصا
tower	برج	huge	ضخم	damage	يدمر - يتلف
softly	بلطف / برفق	mirror	مرآة	celebrate	يحتفل
sailing ship	سفينة إبحار شراعية	image	صورة	pipe	ماسورة - أنبوب
burn	يحترق / يشتعل	location	موقع	poem	قصيدة
stainless steel	مادة الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ	height	ارتفاع	rhyme	قافية

• Famous places and sculptures

Cloud Gate	تمثال بوابة السحاب	Balloon Dog sculpture	تمثال كلب البالون	Finland	دولة فنلندا
Guggenheim Museum	متحف غوغنهايم [في أسبانيا]	the Sibelius Monument	نصب سيبيلوس	Helsinki	هلسنكي [عاصمة فنلندا]

• Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
stand يقف	stood	stood
shine تشرق - تشرق	shone	shone
sell يبيع	sold	sold
understand يفهم	understood	understood

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
verse	is a part of the poem
rhyme	is when two words sound the same at the end of the word
bubble	a liquid ball full of air
sphere	the shape of a ball
irregular	not following a pattern
reflect	when a mirror shows an image
sculpture	what something is made from , for example , gold , clay , wood
sculptor	a person who makes sculptures

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

a night of colors	ليلة من الألوان	look out far	ينظر بعيدًا
as bright as day	مشرقة مثل النهار	give it away	يتخلص منه
shoot up into the air	منطلق في الهواء	far away	بعيد
take off	يقلع / ينطلق [مثل الصاروخ]	good for	جيد لـ....
with flashes of light	مع وميض من الضوء	over the years	على مر السنين
hold our breath	نحبس / نكتم أنفاسنا		

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



Pop Quiz

on Vocabulary



► **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

- A is a person who makes sculptures.
a. farmer b. teacher c. sculptor d. driver
- When something is , it's not following a pattern.
a. regular b. fixed c. irregular d. straight
- How many seconds can you your breath under water ?
a. catch b. hold c. walk d. go
- A/An is a liquid ball full of air.
a. square b. image c. bubble d. triangle
- A is a part of the poem.
a. sight b. poet c. verse d. shape
- When the mirror shows your image, it it.
a. cuts b. does c. makes d. reflects
- These knives and cooking pots are made of stainless
a. steel b. wool c. wood d. leather

8. Any perfect round object like a ball is a
 a. square b. rectangle c. sphere d. triangle
9. A is when two words sound the same at the end of the word.
 a. rhyme b. story c. subject d. book
10. The lights of the fireworks make the sky as as day.
 a. dark b. black c. bright d. cloudy

II Listening and reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Tall Tree and The Eye	sculptor	Anish Kapoor is a sculptor.
	material	He uses different materials for his works.
	art	People can see his art all over the world.
	sculpture	Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture.
	sphere	It is made of stainless steel balls or spheres.
	stainless	Stainless steel is a very shiny metal.
	irregular	The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern.
Cloud Gate	bubble	They look like bubbles which are floating!
	Cloud Gate	Cloud Gate in Chicago is one of Kapoor's sculptures.
	reflect	Stainless steel reflects the sky like a huge mirror.
	popular	Cloud Gate is a very popular sight to visit.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Lesson 3

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

A Night of Colors

We stand together in the cold, black night,
 The sky is dark and far away.
 Everything is quiet and still, until - BANG!
 The lights make the sky as bright as day.
 Rockets shoot up into the air,
 We shout and cheer, watching them fly.
 Colors burn brilliantly against the black,



We see them dance happily through the sky.
The sound fills my ears, as each rocket takes off,
Exploding noisily with flashes of light.
Beads of red, yellow, silver, and gold,
Are beautiful jewels in the black night.
With blasts so loud and rockets up high,
A colorful fire against the stars.
The sky shines brightly with light and color,
We hold our breath, looking out far.



Lesson 4

Anish Kapoor's sculptures

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

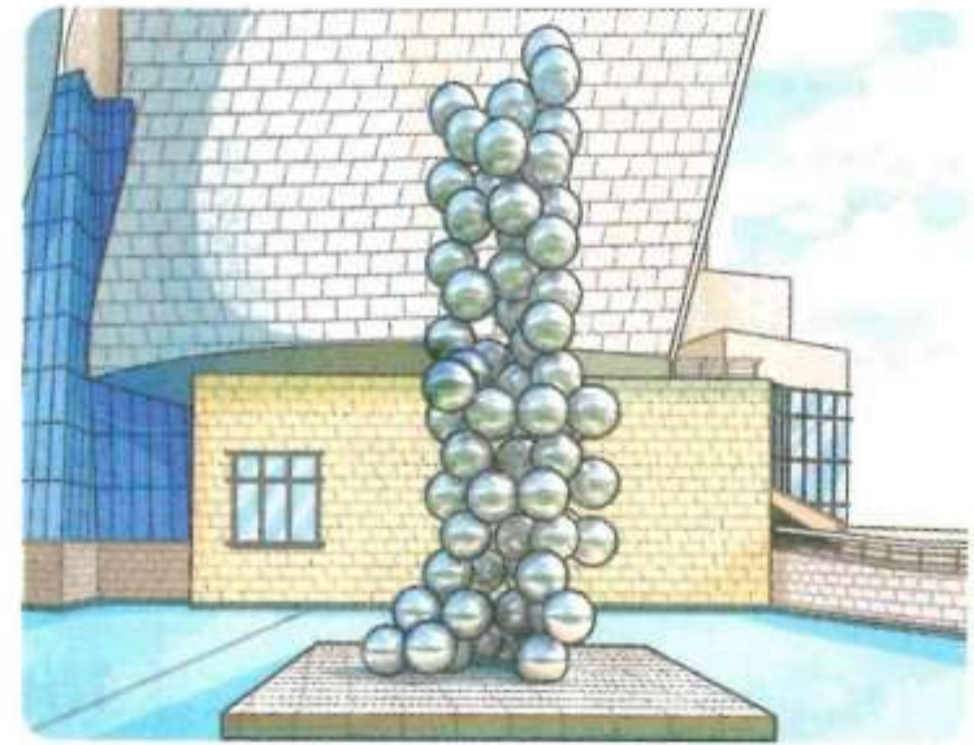
Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world.

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain.

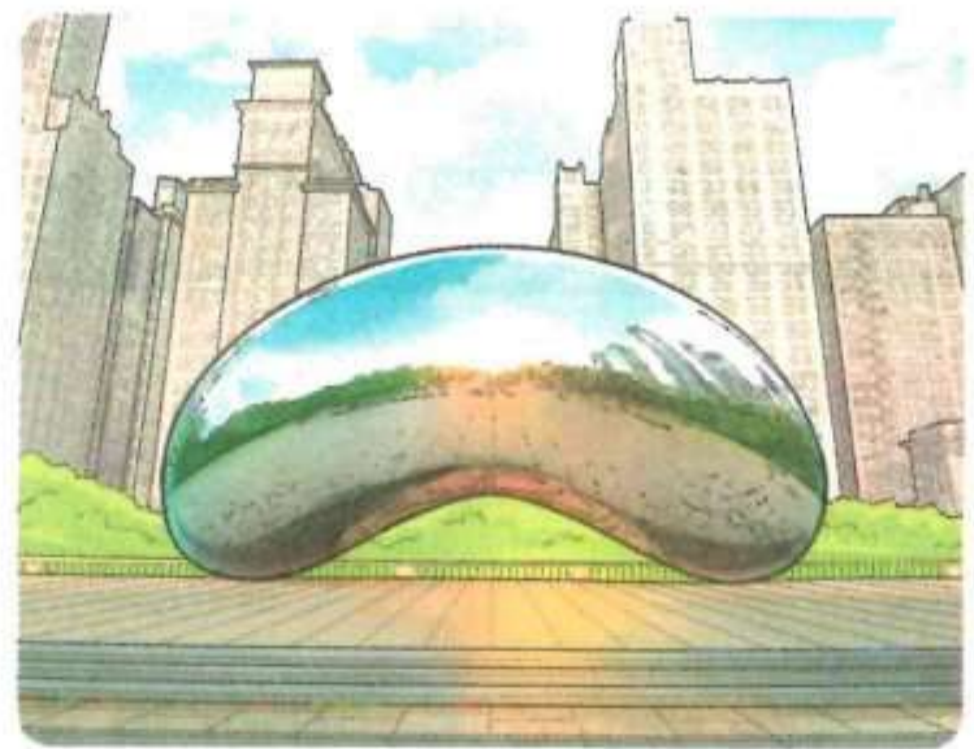
This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres.

Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating!

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.



Tall Tree and the Eye



Cloud Gate

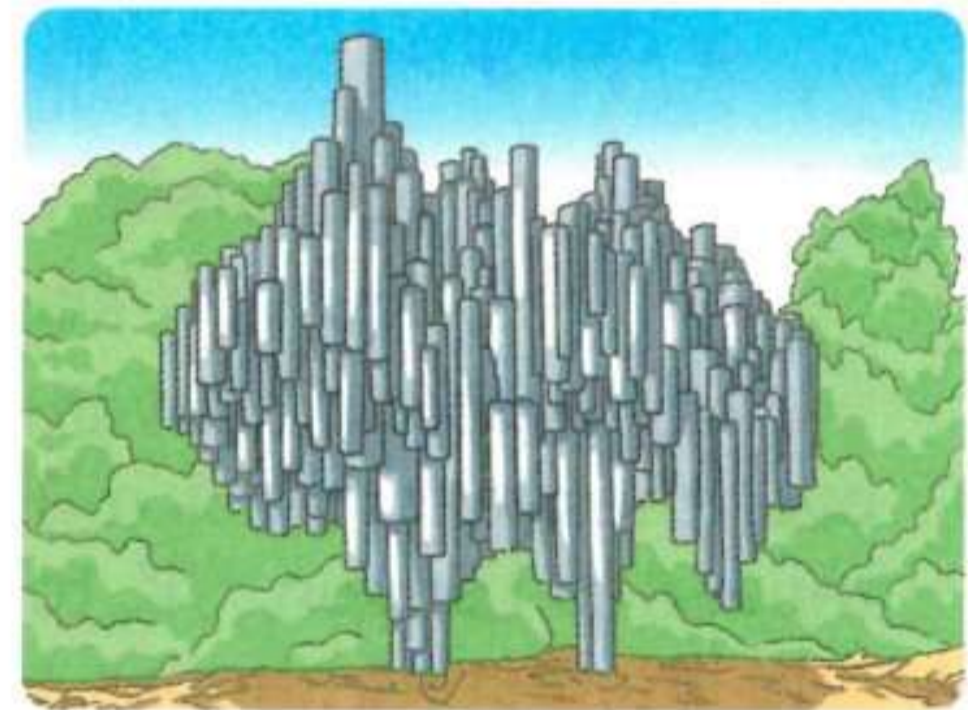
For example, in Tall Tree and the Eye, Kapoor uses stainless steel because it is a very strong material. It's very good for outdoor sculptures because it stays shiny, and bad weather doesn't damage it.

Over the years, Kapoor has made many other famous sculptures. Another famous Kapoor sculpture is Cloud Gate. You can see it in Chicago, USA.

Cloud Gate is very high - people can even walk under it! It is also made of stainless steel, which reflects the sky, the buildings, and the people around it, like a huge mirror. It is a very popular sight to visit in Chicago.

The Sibelius monument was built in 1967 to celebrate the famous musician Jean Sibelius, who died in 1957.

Sibelius was from Finland, a country in northern Europe. Sibelius's work is still popular today and played at concerts and in theaters all around the world.



The sculpture was created by the female artist Eila Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 steel pipes of different sizes in an irregular shape. It is 8.5 meters high and 10.5 meters wide. Hiltunen wanted the sculpture to look like the way Sibelius's music sounds. You can see this sculpture in the Sibelius Park, in Helsinki, the capital city of Finland.



Pop Quiz on Reading

► Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

sculptures - outdoor - sculptor - stainless - math

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands [1] well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make [2] that will stay in place for a long time. For example, in Tall Tree and the Eye, Kapoor uses [3] steel because it is a very strong material. It's very good for [4] sculptures because it stays shiny, and bad weather doesn't damage it.

Test 2

on Lessons 3 & 4

نصوص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة فى اختبار الوحدة]

• **1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. Sibelius was from , a country in northern Europe.
a. Germany b. Finland c. England d. Italy
2. Sibelius's work is still played at and in theaters today.
a. parks b. streets c. concerts d. museums
3. The Sibelius monument was a
a. square b. sculpture c. museum d. club
4. The sculpture has 600 steel of different sizes in an irregular shape.
a. designs b. pipes c. columns d. walks

• **2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.**

public – sculptor – study – materials – sphere

Anish Kapoor is a very famous artist. His art works are popular all over the world. He is a [1] He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to [2] art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different [3] Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for [4] places, and people can see his art all over the world.

• **3 Read the following text and answer the questions.**

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain.

This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres.

Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating!

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about "A".
a. material b. museum c. sculpture d. subject
2. The underlined word "famous" means
a. well-known b. terrible c. different d. dark
3. Tall tree and the Eye is in
a. France b. London c. Egypt d. Spain

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Why did the artist use stainless steel ?

.....

5. How do you know that Kapoor was a great artist ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you mix yellow and red, you orange.

- a. made b. makes c. making d. make

(Aswan – Nasr Al-Nuba 2024)

2. If you heat butter, it

- a. melting b. melt c. melts d. melted

(Sohag – Akhmeem 2024)

3. When the sun, the plants make their food.

- a. rise b. rises c. rising d. to rise

(Ismailia - New Kasaseen 2024)

4. **WB** The plants die when dad water them.

- a. isn't b. wasn't c. doesn't d. hasn't

5. you go to school, take your school bag.

- a. What b. Where c. Who d. When

6. What you do if you feel hot ?

- a. are b. did c. were d. do

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. good – sculptures – is – for – Stainless steel – outdoor.

.....

2. Mukhtar – an – sculptor – was – Mahmoud – Egyptian.

.....

3. verse – words – How many – each – in – rhyme ?

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A famous sculptor"

Guiding elements:

- artist
- understand
- stainless steel
- damage

.....

.....

.....

.....



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

talented	موهوب	hoopoe	هدهد
acting	فن التمثيل المسرحي	award	جائزة
cello	تشيلو [كمنجة كبيرة]	interviewer	مُحاور - القائم بالمقابلة
lump of clay	كتلة صلصال	perform	يؤدي - يعرض
pottery wheel	عجلة فخارية	stage	خشبة المسرح
apron	مريلة	choir	كورال [فريق من المنشدين]
kiln	فرن [للخزف]	edit	يُحرر - يُعدل
decorate	يزين - يزخرف	audience	جمهور [المسرح - السينما]
craft	حرفة	props	دعائم [ديكور مثلا ...]

• Extra vocabulary

magazines	مجلات	report	تقرير
instrument	أداة/آلة موسيقية	flat	مسطح - مستو
string	وتر [الآلات الموسيقية]	round	مستدير
surprised	مدهش	newspaper	جريدة
lucky	محظوظ	family party	حفلة عائلي
violin	آلة الكمان	school show	عرض مدرسي
turn	يدور - دور	except	باستثناء / ماعدا
explain	يشرح	shelf	رف
button	زرّ / مفتاح	shadow	ظل
photographer	مصور	artwork	عمل فني
event	حدث	choice	اختيار
festival	مهرجان	excitedly	بانفعال / بحماسة
musician	موسيقيار	costumes	أزياء خاصة
actor	ممثل	a play	مسرحية
advertisement	إعلان	chance	فرصة

• Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
choose يختار	chose	chosen
keep يحافظ	kept	kept
speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
stage	the part of a theater where actors act
award	a prize
musician	a person whose job is playing music
talented	with a special ability to do something well
cello	a kind of musical instrument with strings
perform	show your acting or musical skills to other people
lump	a solid object without a clear shape
wheel	a round flat circle which turns around
kiln	a very hot oven for making pottery hard and strong
clay	a natural material you can use to make pots, vases, or sculptures
apron	you wear this to keep your clothes clean
choir	a group of people who sing together
edit	to change photos to make them better
a play	a story that you watch at the theater
advertisement	this tells people about an event, so they want to see it
photography	the activity or job of taking photographs
exhibition	a group of artwork in one place for people to see
costumes	special clothes that people wear at festivals or on stage
props	the things that actors need on stage to make the play look real

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

put on = wear	يرتدى	at the side of	بجانب / في جانب
wait for	ينتظر	well done	أحسن
cut up pieces of	يقطع قطعًا من	ready to	مستعدًا لـ
blow up	ينفخ	look real	تبدو حقيقة
walk past museum	يمشي مارًا بالمتحف	That sounds exciting !	هذا يبدو ممتع !
play an instrument	يعزف على آلة موسيقية		



Pop Quiz

on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لاتقان المفردات اللغوية



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. His job is playing music. He's a
a. musician b. poet c. teacher d. fisherman
2. A is a kind of musical instrument with strings.
a. flute b. cello c. piano d. drum
3. A is a part of the theater where actors act.
a. kitchen b. class c. playground d. stage
4. A person has a special ability to do something well.
a. busy b. worried c. talented d. nervous
5. She started her pottery project with a of clay.
a. lump b. group c. leaf d. pair
6. Rana won a/an in the music competition.
a. question b. award c. match d. season
7. Have you ever a play on stage at school ?
a. eaten b. slept c. performed d. run
8. A round flat circle which turns round is called a/an
a. whale b. wall c. image d. wheel
9. A is a very hot oven for making pottery hard and strong.
a. kiln b. freezer c. fridge d. lump
10. A group of people who sing together is called "".
a. team b. choir c. family d. party
11. is the activity or job of taking photographs.
a. Drawing b. Driving c. Photography d. Singing
12. A/An is a group of artwork in one place for people to see.
a. photo b. exhibition c. image d. chance
13. A story that you watch at the theater is called a/an
a. play b. instrument c. photo d. stage
14. Actors wear special at festivals or on stage.
a. strings b. costumes c. tools d. plays
15. To means to change photos to make them better.
a. edit b. act c. perform d. damage

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My pottery project	lump	We started our project with a lump of clay.
	pottery wheel	The teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel.
	apron	We put an apron over our clothes.
	kiln	The teacher put the bowl in the kiln.
	decorate	I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Lesson 5

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Interviewer: Wow, Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're so talented!

Mazen : Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a concert!

Interviewer: I'm not surprised. You played the guitar and sang for over an hour!

Mazen : It went very quickly. But nobody knew about the problem I had before the concert!

Interviewer: A problem - what was that ?

Mazen : I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing in a different room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where. I looked everywhere, even under all the chairs, but I couldn't find it! Five minutes before the concert, my friend came into the room. She saw it behind the door. I was very lucky!

My pottery project by Amal



My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl.



First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy.



When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong.



Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.



I painted it pink all over first, and waited for the paint to dry. Then I used different colors of paint to make circles all over it.



I really enjoyed making my bowl! When I finished my bowl, I gave it to my mom for her birthday. She loved it!

Behind the camera

It was two weeks until the school show, and everybody was excited. Everybody except Magdy.

"I'm going to play the piano," said Waleed.

"The choir is going to sing beautiful songs," said Nesma.

"And I'm going to make costumes for the choir," said Dalia.

"I've written a funny play!" said Samir.

Magdy was worried. He didn't go to piano lessons, and he didn't like singing.

"What am I going to do?" he thought. On the way home, Magdy walked past the museum. There was an advertisement for a photography exhibition. A black-and-white photo showed a man playing the piano on stage, with the audience in the shadow. "That's amazing," thought Magdy. It felt like he was there, listening to the music.

At home, Magdy started looking in cupboards.

"What are you doing?" asked Mom.

"Dad has a good camera, doesn't he?"

Do you know where it is?" asked Magdy.

"Yes," said Mom, taking a box from a shelf. "He hasn't used it for a long time. Are you studying photography at school?"

"No, but I'll learn!" Magdy said.

Magdy found his dad's photography books. He read about the different buttons on the camera. Then he learned how to edit the photos on the computer to make them lighter or darker.

Magdy was excited. On the weekend, his mom and dad took him to a photography exhibition. After the exhibition, they went into the city and Magdy took photos of things he saw.

Finally, Magdy spoke to his teacher. "Miss Salwa, I'm worried. I don't like being on stage. I don't like singing or acting, and I can't play an instrument."

"Magdy, this is a chance for you to do something you enjoy, to express yourself. Can you think of something?" said his teacher.



"I know! I could be the photographer! I can be at the side of the stage while the class are performing. Then I can edit the photos for our school website," said Magdy.

Miss Salwa smiled and said, "Well done, Magdy. That's a great idea!"

The class practiced their instruments and learned their lines. On the evening of the show, they were happy and ready to perform. When each person was on stage, Magdy took photos.

Magdy's photos were on the school website the next week. "You're going to be a great photographer, Magdy," said his dad.

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

It was the day after the school show. Magdy's friend Samir was visiting his grandma.

"Hi, Grandma. I've come to visit you," said Samir.



"Hello, Samir," said Grandma. "How was the school show? Were you in a play?" "It was great, Grandma, but I wasn't in a play. Magdy and I don't like acting. Magdy was the photographer for the school show, but my job was better than that. I helped Mr Ibrahim make the props," said Samir excitedly.

"What are props?" asked Grandma.

"Props are the things that actors need on stage to make the play look real," said Samir. "If the play is about a family at home in the living room, you need some furniture - like a couch, a lamp, or some pictures for the wall. Sometimes we get the things we need from parents. But sometimes we make them!"

"You make them?" said Grandma, looking surprised.

"Yes, I love making things, Grandma. We use wood, cardboard, colored paper.. anything! My teacher Mr Ibrahim is very good at making things and he shows me what to do," explained Samir.

"That sounds exciting, Samir. I'd like to see some of the things you made," said Grandma.

"That's easy," said Samir. "Magdy put his photos on the school website. I'll get my phone and I'll show you!"

III Language

1 Prepositional phrase شبه الجملة

- A prepositional phrase is a group of words beginning with a preposition, and ending with a noun or pronoun, that the preposition refers to, and sometimes an adjective. It doesn't contain a verb.

• شبه الجملة هي عبارة عن مجموعة من الكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف جر وتنتهي باسم أو ضمير الذي يشير إليها حرف الجر، وأحياناً تحتوي على صفة ولا تحتوي على فعل :

- Prepositions can include : يمكن أن تتضمن حروف الجر هذه الأحرف بالجدول التالي :

after	بعد	behind	خلف	in	في	under	تحت	with	مع
before	قبل	for	ل / لمدة	into	داخل	through	خلال	on	على

- e.g : I'm always tired after a concert.

preposition noun A prepositional phrase

She looked very confident at the concert.

preposition noun A prepositional phrase

Nadine never puts her cello behind the door.

preposition noun A prepositional phrase

2 When عندما

- We can use "when" to talk about the order in which things happen. Both parts of the sentence are in the same tense.

• يمكننا أن نستخدم "when" للحديث عن الترتيب الذي تحدث به الأشياء. كلا الجزئين من الجملة في نفس الزمن.

- e.g : - **When** my bowl was finished, my teacher put it in a kiln.
- **When** it was very wet, we put the paper onto the balloons.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Heba loves performing stage.
a. into b. on c. in d. of
2. She often gets nervous a concert.
a. to b. on c. before d. above
3. In class, do you put your school bag your chair ?
a. before b. after c. in d. under
4. What do you usually do school ?
a. on b. after c. about d. of

5. Who does he eat lunch ?
a. when b. with c. on d. in
6. He ran because he was late the concert.
a. on b. for c. under d. behind
7. I always feel tired doing exercises.
a. before b. in c. after d. under
8. They played music about two hours.
a. on b. for c. under d. behind
9. When our teacher comes the classroom, we stand up.
a. into b. behind c. on d. for
10. My uncle works Alexandria.
a. on b. in c. of d. behind
11. I looked my bed, but I couldn't find anything.
a. under b. before c. off d. of
12. going home, go to the supermarket.
a. Under b. In c. Before d. Behind
13. The park my house is beautiful.
a. off b. behind c. for d. of
14. Honey is good your health.
a. of b. into c. on d. for
15. Let's pack our suitcase we buy the tickets.
a. under b. after c. in d. for

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.



1. I do breathing exercises [behind] I sleep.
2. [On] her poem, she talks about nature.
3. He has stayed at the hotel [on] two days.
4. I help mom wash up the dishes [in] dinner.
5. Actors love performing [of] stage.
6. Students often get nervous [after] the exam.
7. We walked quietly [on] the theater.
8. When I went to the zoo, I [find] new animals there.
9. When the child [puts] clay on the wheel, it went fast.

Test 3

on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

نصوص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل (تدريبات القصة فى اختبار الوحدة)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. My class worked on a project at school this week.
a. music b. art c. plant d. pottery
2. We started with a lump of
3. I wanted to make a
4. I gave it to my mom for her She loved it.

(Gharbia - East Tanta 2024)

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

guitar - concert - problem - award - talented

Interviewer : Wow, Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're so [1]

Mazen : Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a [2]

Interviewer : I'm not surprised. You played the [3] and sang for over an hour!

Mazen : It went very quickly. But nobody knew about the problem I had before the concert!

Interviewer : A [4] - what was that ?

Mazen : I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing in a different room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

If we were all the same, life would be **boring**. In Mrs Mona's class, Asser is different to his friends because he's tall and he has green eyes. He's good at science, but his friend Seleem is good at geography. Seleem's hair is straight, but Walid's hair is curly and he wears glasses. Injy has curly hair and wears braces to help her teeth get straight. The important thing is that we look after each other. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. It's good that everyone is different. But, everyone is equally important.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The best title for the text is " " .
 a. Different clothes b. We're all different
 c. Our community d. Science class
- The opposite of the underlined word "boring" is
 a. different b. safe c. interesting d. straight
- Asser is good at
 a. math b. science c. geography d. English

B. Answer the following questions.

- What is Seleem good at ?

- Why does Injy wear braces ?

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- We like to go for a walk a sunny day.
 a. at b. on c. in d. above
- He played the piano one hour.
 a. for b. on c. behind d. into
- Close the door quietly you get out of the room.
 a. behind b. after c. on d. at
- I finish my homework, I go to bed.
 a. When b. Where c. Who d. What
- Wash your hands you have food.
 a. on b. in c. before d. through
- The birds can fly the trees.
 a. under b. through c. about d. at

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- makes – costumes – choir – She – the school – for.

- edit – how – He – to – learned – photos.

- you – on – day – What – do – a – sunny – do ?

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A school show"

Guiding elements:

- photographer • stage • the play • props • photos

.....

(Sharkia – East Zagazig 2024)

Skills 1

Reading Comprehension

Determine the meaning of words and phrases



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد معنى كلمة أو عبارة في النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية وإذا واجهتك صعوبة في تحديد معنى الكلمة، اقرأ النص جيدًا وخبّن المعنى.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer.

Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating! Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

شرح الحل
تقرأ الفقرة جيداً لتعريف معاني الكلمات المستوردة
[great / عظيم] [shiny / لامع] [pattern / شكل / نمط]

1. The underlined word "shiny" in the text means
a. gray b. pale c. bright d. lucky
2. The underlined word "pattern" has the same meaning as
a. movie b. shape c. idea d. web
3. The underlined word "great" can be replaced by
a. important b. lazy c. low d. enormous

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions.

Sibelius was from Finland, a country in northern Europe. Sibelius's work is still popular today and played at concerts and in theaters all around the world.

The sculpture in the Sibelius park was created by the female artist Eila Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 steel pipes of different sizes in an irregular shape. It is 8.5 meters high and 10.5 meters wide. Hiltunen wanted the sculpture to look like the way Sibelius's music sounds. You can see this sculpture in the Sibelius Park, in Helsinki, the capital city of Finland.

1. The underlined word "popular" in the text means that Sibelius's work is still
a. famous b. regular c. irregular d. bad
2. The underlined word "created" in the text means
a. damaged b. invited c. made d. decorated
3. The opposite of the underlined word "female" is
a. daughter b. woman c. baby d. male

Skills 2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [أنشطة إبداعية] و [مشروع الخزف] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها في تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

Write the meaning :

.....
تعبير عن
.....
صلصال
.....
صناعة الأعمال الفنية
.....
من المصنقات
.....
مواد قديمة
.....
يحافظ على
.....
تمثال منحوت
.....
مبدع

Creative activities

Pottery project

.....
مريلة
.....
كتلة
.....
مشروع
.....
فرن [للخزف]
.....
عجلة فخارية
.....
يزين

Step 2 Sentences

Complete the sentences :

1. There are many ways to yourself.
2. You can use plastic bottles and lids in modeling.
3. Use to make a bowl if you like pottery.
4. Use recycled cloth to and help the planet .
5. You can make a beautiful with a bit of everything .
6. You could use wood to make a

1. My class worked on a pottery this week .
2. We started with a of clay .
3. Our teacher showed us how to use a It goes so fast .
4. We put on over our clothes .
5. We put our pottery bowls in a to make them hard .
6. We used special paint to them .

Step 3 Topics

Write a paragraph using the sentences :

"Creative activities"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Write a report using the sentences :

"Pottery project"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٧ جملة].

1 A creative project competition

There are so many different ways to express myself^[1]. I can enter a competition using any kind of creative work^[2]. I'm making some outdoor art for my creative project competition^[3]. I use the things I find around me^[4]. For example, I use leaves to make some outdoor art^[5]. When it's windy, the leaves and flowers in my art move^[6]. The back of the school playground is better to make the art^[7]. When it rains, outdoor art looks terrible! I decided to put big cloth over it until the rain stops^[9].

2 A school show

Yesterday, it was the school show^[10]. It was great^[11]. I was in a play because I like acting^[12]. Tamer was the photographer for the school show^[13]. When each person was on stage, Tamer took photos^[14]. The play was about a family at home in the living room^[15]. We needed some furniture like a sofa, a lamp, or some pictures for the wall^[16]. My teacher Mr Ali is very good at making things^[17]. He shows me what I do^[18].

3 A famous sculptor

From

To

Subject

Dear Ali,

How are things^[19]? I'd like to tell you about a famous sculptor^[20]. Kapoor is a great artist^[21]. He was born in India^[22]. He studied art in the UK^[23]. He likes to use new shapes as well as different materials^[24]. He understands maths well, and he also understands materials^[25]. He can make sculptures that will stay in a place for a long time^[26]. He uses stainless steel because it stays shiny and bad weather doesn't damage it^[27].

Yours,
Omar

Review on Unit 1

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الأولى في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

creative	مبدع - إبداعي	sculptor	نحات
exhibition	معرض - عرض	audience	جمهور
junk modeling	تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة	reflect	يعكس
pottery	فن صناعة الأواني الفخارية	talented	موهوب
sculpture	فن النحت - تمثال منحوت	stage	خشبة المسرح
jewels	مجوهرات	craft	حرفة
		costumes	أزياء خاصة

Language

1 Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

► Formation :

Statement
الجملة الخبرية

→ If / When + present simple, ... present simple / can + inf.

ex. - If you mix blue and red, you get purple.

If / When + مضارع بسيط + imperative .
صيغة الامر

ex. - If someone tells you a secret, don't tell anyone.

Wh- Q.

السؤال بـ (أداة
استفهام)

→ Q.W. + do / does + subj. + inf. + if / when + ... مضارع بسيط ؟

ex. - What do you do if/ when you feel sad?

2 Prepositional phrase شبه الجملة

• Prepositions can include :

after	بعد	behind	خلف	in	في	under	تحت	with	مع
before	قبل	for	لـ / لمدة	into	داخل	through	خلال	on	على

► ex. He is always tired after the work days.

Test 4 on Unit 1

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

• نصوص الاستماع
• فى نهاية الكتاب.
• التقييمات الشهرية
• فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Anish Kapoor is a/an
a. painter b. sculptor c. actor d. designer
2. He was born in
a. India b. Egypt c. China d. England
3. He moved to London to study
a. English b. engineering c. music d. art
4. People can see his art all over the
a. city b. village c. country d. world

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

poem – sculpture – interesting – wood – competition

Ehab : Hello, Kareem. Did you go to the art club today ?

Kareem : No, I didn't.

Ehab : Did you hear about the art [1] ?

Kareem : Oh, wow. That sounds [2] !

Ehab : What are you going to make for the competition ?

Kareem : I think about making a [3]

Ehab : What material are you going to use ?

Kareem : I like to use [4]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl.

First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy.

When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong.

Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The writer used special to decorate the bowl.
a. jewelry b. shells c. paint d. shapes
2. The text is generally about "".
a. Making clothes b. A pottery project c. A trip to a place d. Special paints
3. The opposite of the underlined word "messy" is
a. lucky b. hot c. wet d. clean

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What did the writer want to make ?
.....

5. How do they keep their clothes clean ?
.....

• **4 The Reader**

A. Read and write Yes or No.

1. Asser's grandma was waiting him at the school gate. [.....]

2. Mayar was carrying a game. [.....]

3. Asser and Mayar are students at school. [.....]

4. Asser and Mayar had a hard time at grandma's house. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who is Mrs Azza ?
.....

2. What do grandma and children bake ?
.....

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Heba often likes to read stories she sleeps.

a. before b. after c. on d. at

2. We all cheered when the actors on the stage.

a. appears b. appear c. appeared d. appearing

3. What do you do Sundays ?

a. on b. into c. under d. through

4. You can't the play if you forget the tickets.

a. watching b. watch c. to watch d. watches

5. When we recycle materials, we the environment.

a. helps b. help c. helping d. helped

6. If it is cold, I can my jacket.

a. wear b. wore c. wears d. wearing

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. strings – a musical – The cello – instrument – is – with.
.....

2. wood – The – is – of – sculpture – made.
.....

3. like to – do – yourself – How – you – express ?
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

"A creative project competition"

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

• enter a competition

• project

• outdoor art

Test 5 on Unit 1

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Mahmoud Mukhtar was a/an
a. painter b. sculptor c. actor d. designer
2. He was born in
a. India b. Egypt c. China d. England
3. He has many famous
a. films b. songs c. sculptures d. plays
4. His sculptures are
a. bad b. ugly c. small d. amazing

(Port Said - East Port Said 2024)

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

website – cinema – photos – exhibition – taking

Maged is a creative photographer. He is good at [1]
photographs. On the weekend, his mom and dad took him to a photography
[2] After the exhibition, they went into the city and Maged took
[3] of things he saw. He shared his photos on the school
[4] and his friends liked them very much

(Giza – October 2024)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

English is an interesting language. It is spoken by a lot of people in different countries. Still, more people are learning it all over the world. Learning English is not so difficult, but, if you do not use it, you will forget it. English gives you the real chance to read and know how other people think and live. This will make you know a lot about the wide world. If you ever think of going to foreign countries, you will find English more and more useful. Good English also gives you better chances for work. (Giza - October 2024)

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about " ".
a. Countries b. English c. People d. Work
2. The English language is
a. wonderful b. boring c. difficult d. uncomfortable
3. The underlined word "difficult" means
a. interesting b. easy c. hard d. useful

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Where is English spoken ?

.....

5. What will happen if you do not use English ?

.....

(Sharkia - Tenth of Ramadan 2024)

• **4 The Reader**

A. Read and write Yes or No.

(Kafr El-Sheikh - Educational supervision 2024)

- 1. Mrs Azza gave Asser a Braille Book. [.....]
- 2. Mom offered to make cookies for Asser and Mayar. [.....]
- 3. Asser and Mayar went to their grandma's house. [.....]
- 4. Mayar was carrying a book. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did grandma come to pick Asser and Mayar up ?
.....

(Dakahlia - West of Mansoura 2024)

2. When did Mayar's parents learn Braille ?
.....

(Sharkia - West Zagazig 2024)

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. She often gets nervous the concert. (Sharkia - Mashtoul 2024)

- a. in b. on c. before d. under

2. you go to school, take your school bag. (Luxor - Girga 2024)

- a. What b. Where c. Who d. When

3. I study well the exam. (Sharkia - Al-Husseiniyah 2024)

- a. before b. after c. next d. on

4. When I run, I happy. (Minia - Mallawi 2024)

- a. felt b. feel c. feels d. feeling

5. When the sun, the plants make their food. (Assiut - Educational supervision 2024)

- a. rise b. rising c. rises d. to rise

6. Jack walked the forest. (Port Said - East Port said 2024)

- a. through b. out c. on d. for

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. in - will - art exhibition - Your work - a big - appear. (Mina - Deir Moawas 2024)

.....

2. We - clothes - over - our - aprons - put on. (Menoufia - Shbeen El Koom 2024)

.....

3. creative - you - do - What - like - activities ? (Giza - Warraq 2024)

.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Creative activities"

Guiding elements:

- junk modeling • pottery • collage
- use • skills • paint

.....

(Menoufia - Sadat 2024)

Home is where the heart is

المنزل هو المكان الذي تستريح به

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية :

In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- understand and use words for free-time activities.
- أفهم وأستخدم كلمات لأنشطة وقت الفراغ.
- understand and use the first conditional.
- أفهم وأستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى.
- listen and understand people explaining their opinions.
- أستمع وأفهم شرح الأشخاص لآرائهم.
- read and understand a science-fiction story.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصة خيال علمي.
- understand and use phrasal verbs.
- أفهم وأستخدم الأفعال الاصطلاحية.
- write an instructional guide.
- أكتب دليل إرشادي.
- use definitions to explain new words.
- أستخدم تعريفات لشرح الكلمات الجديدة.
- read and understand a mystery story.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصة غامضة.





I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

cartoons	رسوم متحركة	chess	لعبة الشطرنج
sporty	رياضي	push-up	تمارين الضغط
comic books	كتب مصورة مضحكة	apartment	شقة
swap	يتبادل	hairdryer	مُجفف الشعر
appliance	آلة - جهاز	toaster	محمصة خبز كهربية
blade	شفرة	refrigerator	ثلاجة
motor	مُحرِّك - موتور	blender	خلاط

• Extra vocabulary

illness	مرض	awesome	مدهش - رائع	quite	إلى حد ما - تمامًا
hobbies	هوايات	chat	يحدثش	toast	خبز محمص
PCs	أجهزة الحاسوب الشخصي	blend	يُمزج - يخلط	strawberries	فراولة
Polish	بولندي [الجنسية]	medicine	طب - دواء	kettle	غلاية
invent	يخترع	scientist	عالم	juicer	مغصرة [أداة للعصر]
sharp	حاد	without	بدون	organize	ينظم
chop	يقطع - يفرم	vanilla	فانيليا	save	ينقذ / يوفر
mixer	خلاط	decorations	زينة	trouble	مشكلة
milkshake	حليب مخفوق	vaccine	لقاح	games console	وحدة التحكم في الألعاب الإلكترونية
invention	اختراع	board games	العب لوحية		

• Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
win يفوز	won	won
spend يقضى - ينفق	spent	spent

• Did you know ?

- Egyptian families are getting smaller! Today, an average family has three or four people in one family home. In 2000, it was seven!

• يقل عدد أفراد العائلات المصرية ! حيث يتوسط عدد افراد العائلة. اليوم ثلاثة أو اربعة اشخاص في منزل العائلة في حيث أنه كان سبعة أشخاص في عام ٢٠٠٠.

bring	يحضر	brought	brought
hide	يختبئ	hid	hidden
drive	يقود	drove	driven
come	يأتي	came	come

• **Study these Definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
milkshake	a drink that is often chocolate or vanilla
motor	a part of a machine that makes something move
invention	something that someone has made for the first time
smoothie	a drink made of blended fruits or sometimes vegetables
appliance	an object that is useful at home
vaccine	a type of medicine that stops you getting ill
blade	something sharp that cuts

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

do push-ups	يقوم بتمارين الضغط	get bored with	يشعر بالملل من
move into	ينتقل إلى	spend time with	يقضى وقت مع
share with	يشارك مع	the same size as	نفس الحجم مثل
change over the years	تتغير على مر السنين	for the first time	لأول مرة
in the bottom of	في الجزء السفلي من	protect ... from	يحمى ... من



Pop Quiz

on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لاتقان المفردات اللغوية



► **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. My bedroom is very big, so I it with my brother.
a. chat b. share c. spend d. finish
2. is a quite difficult board game.
a. Taekwondo b. Tennis c. Chess d. Volleyball

• **Did you know ?**

• One of the first cartoons was made in the early 1900s in France. It features a simple stick person moving!

• واحد من اوائل افلام الرسوم المتحركة صنع في اوائل القرن العشرين في فرنسا. وكان يُعرض شخص علي شكل عصاة بسيطة متحركة.

3. I usually comic books with my friend and talk about them.
a. build b. play c. move d. swap
4. Ali is He likes playing volleyball and tennis.
a. fat b. sporty c. unhealthy d. lazy
5. I usually watch on TV. They are funny !
a. weather b. matches c. sports d. cartoons
6. is my favorite drink. It's often chocolate or vanilla.
a. Orange juice b. Tea c. Milkshake d. Lemonade
7. is a part of a machine that makes something move.
a. Blade b. Motor c. Appliance d. Vaccine
8. Refrigerators, blenders and toasters are that we use in the kitchen.
a. games b. appliances c. festivals d. places
9. The sharp in the bottom of the blender chops the food.
a. motor b. blade c. fork d. spoon
10. is a type of medicine that stops you getting ill.
a. Smoothie b. Vaccine c. Toaster d. Fever

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Lesson 1

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My fantastic bedroom	apartment	We moved into a new apartment a month ago.
	light	My room is very light and comfortable.
	share	I share my bedroom with my brother.
	desk - PC	We have a long desk for our PCs.
	homework	We can do our homework in our bedroom.
	violin	I am learning to play the violin.
	sporty	My brother is sporty and he plays volleyball.
	chess club	We play chess at the school chess club.

Lesson 2

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Amazing appliances	appliance	I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance.
	milkshake	I use a blender for making milkshake with my mom.
	blade	When the blade turns, it chops the food.
	motor	The motor turns the blade.
	vaccine	Blenders were used to make a vaccine.
	blenders	There are blenders made of plastic, glass and metal.
	heat	Some blenders can heat food.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Lesson 1

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

My fantastic bedroom by Seleem

We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom !

I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends.

We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room ! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV !

When we finish our homework, we can play computer games with our friends - that's a lot of fun ! My favorite game is a building game. We watch cartoons with our friends, too.

I also love swapping comic books, and like reading them in bed. My friends and I swap them once a week and talk about them.

I'm learning to play the violin at the moment, and I practice a lot. I'm not very good yet, so sometimes my brother gets bored with my music, especially when he's tired ! He's very sporty and plays a lot of volleyball, so he does push-ups in our room - he often does 30 in the evening !



Maged and I have many of the same friends. They're all awesome. Before we moved, we only chatted to them online, but it's better now that we have a bigger bedroom. They come to our house to talk in our room.

One of our friends, Sherif, is an amazing chess player. We both play chess at the school chess club. Chess is quite difficult for me, but, luckily, Sherif is helping me.

Maged and I like board games. We play them with our friends in our bedroom and with our family in the living room !

Mom and Dad's bedroom is next to ours. Their bedroom is the same size as ours, but they have their own bathroom. I prefer our bedroom - my favorite thing about it is that we have space for our hobbies and for our friends !

Lesson 2

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع و القراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Amazing appliances

1. I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance ! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie with fruit and ice !
2. I use it for making milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make delicious soups, too.
3. Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922 ? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.
4. Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.
5. Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can heat food, too !



Karim



blender

Do you have a blender at home ? Do you use your blender a lot, or a little? What would you do without your blender in the kitchen?

III Language

The first conditional : الحالة الشرطية الأولى :

► **Uses :** الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about future situations.

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لتحدث عن مواقف مستقبلية.

► **Formation :** التكوين

To form it, we use "if" plus the present simple and "will", plus the infinitive :

• لتكوين الجملة نستخدم "if" يليها زمن المضارع البسيط ثم "will" ثم مصدر الفعل :

- We use "can" plus infinitive to express ability.

• نستخدم "can" ثم مصدر الفعل للتعبير عن القدرة.

- We use "may" plus infinitive when we aren't sure.

• نستخدم "may" ثم مصدر الفعل عندما نكون غير متأكدين.



• لاحظ وضع comma [,] قبل بداية الجملة الثانية في حالة وجود [If] في البداية.

- ex.** - If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie.
- People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.
- If you arrive early, you can get a good seat.
- Dad can take you to school if you ask him now.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- If I have enough money, I buy a new bike.
a. was b. will c. would d. am
- If she late, we won't go to the cinema.
a. comes b. come c. will come d. came
- You will sick if you eat a lot of chocolate.
a. be b. being c. been d. to be
- Mazen to your party if you don't invite him.
a. didn't come b. can't come c. don't come d. isn't coming

5. If I see Ahmed, I can him to call you.
a. asked b. asks c. asking d. ask
6. If he hard, he will pass the exams.
a. studied b. study c. studies d. studying
7. If we out tonight, we will go to the cinema.
a. going b. go c. went d. goes
8. If you practice every day, you play the violin well.
a. will b. would c. could d. did
9. If they arrive late, their teacher will angry.
a. is b. be c. are d. was
10. If the weather rainy, we will stay at home.
a. am b. is c. will d. do
11. I'll be happy if my friend to visit me.
a. come b. came c. coming d. comes
12. If you send the letter now, she it tomorrow.
a. receive b. can receive c. is receiving d. received
13. If you me, I can finish in time.
a. helped b. helps c. help d. helping
14. If she hurries, she catch the train; I'm not sure.
a. are b. can c. may d. will
15. If you put food in the refrigerator, it will fresh.
a. staying b. to stay c. stayed d. stay

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.



1. If you put out the trash, I [put] away the dishes.
2. If I wake up late, I'll [missed] the bus.
3. If they [not study] harder, they won't pass the exam.
4. If I find your ring, I [could give] it back to you.
5. If we don't finish the project, our teacher [not be] proud of us.
6. He will [cancels] the party if he is sick.
7. If they [not stop] drinking fizzy drinks, they won't be healthy.
8. I will buy you chocolate cake if you [passed] your exam.
9. If she [play] the piano well, she will join a band.
10. If they don't [won] the match, they will be out of the competition.

Test 6

on Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة فى اختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Stephen Poplawski the blender in 1922.
a. discovered b. bought c. invented d. invited
2. He put a sharp in the bottom of a tall glass.
a. knife b. blade c. spoon d. spade
3. He added a motor.
a. small b. strong c. large d. fast
4. The turned the blade.
a. plane b. hand c. glass d. motor

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

share – happy – room – bed – desk

We moved into a new apartment a month ago. I'm so [1] because I have a new bedroom! I love my new [2] It's a very light and comfortable room. I [3] it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends. We have a long [4] for our PCs, so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi, Laila

It's Grandma's birthday next week and we're organizing a special party for her. If we don't tell her, it'll be a big surprise. Uncle Amir and his family are arriving on Friday. If they bring lots of presents, we'll hide them in my room. Mom is going to cook lots of special food. If the weather is not too hot, we'll all eat outside. I'm helping my sister to make a cake. We're going to use mom's new food mixer. Dad is buying some special decorations for the house. It will look really pretty when we put lots of lights around the house. Everyone will come to our house an hour before lunch. Then Dad will drive to Grandma's house to collect her. It's going to be great!

Love, Samira

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea in the letter is about " ".
a. Family's house b. Special food c. Grandma's birthday d. Samira's birthday
2. The underlined word "collect" means
a. bring b. hide c. organize d. help
3. The party will be at house.
a. Laila's b. Grandpa's c. Samira's d. Amir's

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Do you think grandma will like her birthday party ?
.....

5. How will Samira help ?
.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- If it is hot tomorrow, I can a smoothie.
a. making b. made c. make d. to make
- I will a new apartment if I have a good job.
a. buy b. bought c. buys d. to buy
- People get sick if they have the vaccine.
a. doesn't b. won't c. didn't d. wasn't
- If my friend me, we will play video games together.
a. visiting b. visit c. visits d. visited
- They plant red flowers if they have space. I'm not sure.
a. will b. may c. can d. are
- We will diving if it is sunny tomorrow.
a. go b. goes c. to go d. going

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. make – milkshake – She – to – uses – a blender.
.....

2. comic – We – books – love – swapping – together.
.....

3. at – have – Do – a refrigerator – home – you ?
.....

- 6 Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words about your bedroom to your friend Essam. Your friend's email address is essam@yahoo.com. Your name is Mahdy and your email address is mahdy22@gmail.com.**

Guiding elements:

- comfortable • desk • share • computer games

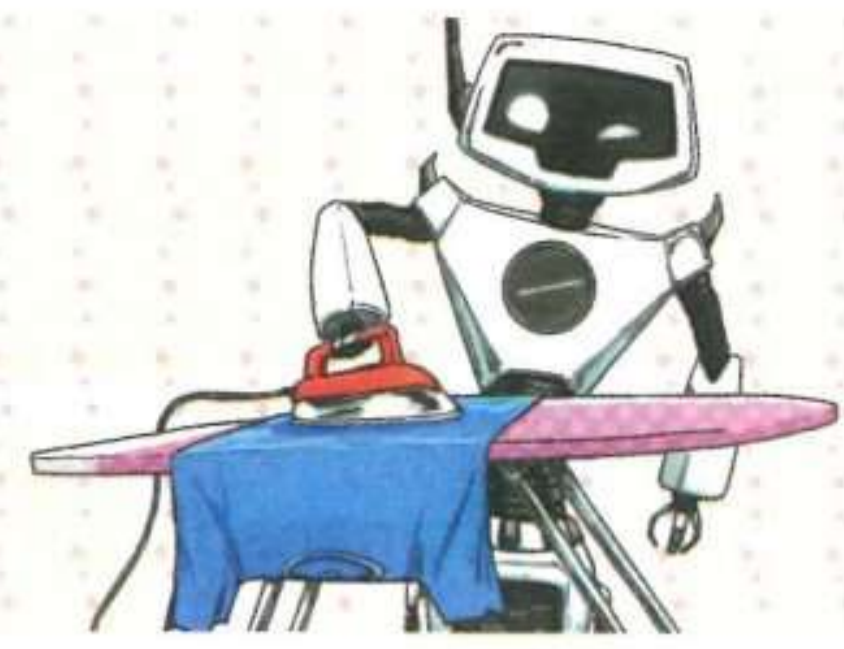
مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

New message x

Secure | https:

From :
To :
Subject :

.....
.....
.....



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

power socket	مقبس التيار	power outage = power cut	انقطاع التيار الكهربائي
extension cable	وصلة سلك [كابل]		
interactive whiteboard	السبورة التفاعلية	lighting	إضاءة
electricity	الكهرباء	programme	يُرمج / برنامج
break down	يتعطل	battery	بطارية
shocked	مُروع / مصدوم	robot	إنسان آلي
terrible	سئ	chores	الأعمال المنزلية

• Extra vocabulary

strange	غريب	plan	يخطط	bus stations	محطات أتوبيس
actually	فعليًا / في واقع الأمر	airport	مطار	traveling	السفر
suddenly	فجأة	discussion	مناقشة	particular	مخصص / محدد
useful	مفيد	electric	كهربائي	free time	وقت الفراغ
disagree	لا يوافق - يعارض	pants	بنطلون	busily	بنشاط / بهمة
microwave	فرن الميكروويف	daughter	ابنة	lazily	بكتل
normally	بصورة طبيعية	certainly	بالتأكيد	summary	ملخص - موجز
humans	البشر	in case	في حالة	however	ومع ذلك
quietly	بهدوء	complicated	معقد	fix	يصلح
uniform	زي موحد	transportation	النقل والمواصلات		
iron	يكيوي				

• Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
mean يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
teach يُدرس	taught	taught
fall يقع - يسقط	fell	fallen
hit يصدم	hit	hit

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

What happened ?	ماذا حدث ؟	go back	يعود - يرجع
agree with	يتفق مع	lay on	يستلقي على
In my opinion	في رأبي	This is awful !	هذا فظيع / مزعج !
learn how to	يتعلم كيف يقوم بـ	go on the internet	يتصل بـ الإنترنت
[be] able to + inf.	قادر على	at midnight	في منتصف الليل
fill... with	يملأ بـ	decide to	يقرر أن
do the chores	يقوم بأداء الأعمال المنزلية		



Pop Quiz

on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لاتقان المفردات اللغوية



► **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

- We need electricity for our homes. We can't live in the dark.
a. studying b. lighting c. washing d. treating
- helps people move from one place to another.
a. Glass b. Chess c. Vaccine d. Transportation
- There is a power, so we can't use our electric kettle.
a. socket b. outage c. energy d. game
- We need to use electric appliances in our homes.
a. electricity b. wood c. glass d. ice
- My sister helps my mom do the She usually washes the dishes.
a. homework b. chores c. sport d. research
- I went to school very late because the school bus
a. ran fast b. worked well c. broke down d. arrived early
- After the accident, the boys were
a. happy b. shocked c. funny d. excited
- My mom wakes up early to our school uniforms.
a. cut b. chop c. iron d. heat
- will do the most difficult jobs in the future.
a. Rabbits b. Robots c. Animals d. Patients
- I had a/an dream; it was about a dangerous car accident.
a. nice b. funny c. awful d. exciting

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Lesson 3

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A strange day at school	power outage	Mariam had a strange day at school because they had a power outage.
	interactive	They were looking at the interactive whiteboard and suddenly all the information disappeared.
	power socket	The teacher tried a different power socket.
	electricity	We sat in a circle and talked about why electricity is important.
why electricity is important in our lives	in our free time	We can use laptops, play video games or watch TV in our free time.
	light	We need lights in the evening.
	blender - electricity	We can't use our electric kettle, blender and refrigerator without electricity.
	transportation	Some cars, buses and trains need electricity.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Lesson 3

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع و القراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Mom : Hi Mariam, how was your day ?

Mariam: Oh, hi Mom ! It was a strange day, actually. We had a power outage! My class and I were looking at the interactive whiteboard, when suddenly all the information disappeared.

Mom : Really ? That is strange ! What did Miss Amira do ?

Mariam: Well, first she got an extension cable and tried a different power socket, but that wasn't working either.

Mom : Oh no ! So, there was no electricity ! What happened ?

Mariam: We couldn't do the lesson Miss Amira planned. So she asked us all to sit in a circle and talk about why electricity is important in our lives.

Mom : Let me guess - everyone thought it was important for computer games !

Mariam: Ha ha! Actually, no. We all had lots of different ideas. It was a really interesting discussion.

Whose opinion do yo agree with



Doha

In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop ! I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening, too.



Khaled

I know what you mean, but I think electricity is most important for lighting. I don't like the dark, and we need lights in the evening.



Salma

I don't agree. I think it's more important in the kitchen. We couldn't use our electric kettle without electricity, or our blender - or our refrigerator !



Tameem

What about transportation ?
Some people have electric cars. And bus stations and airports all need electricity, too.

Lesson 4

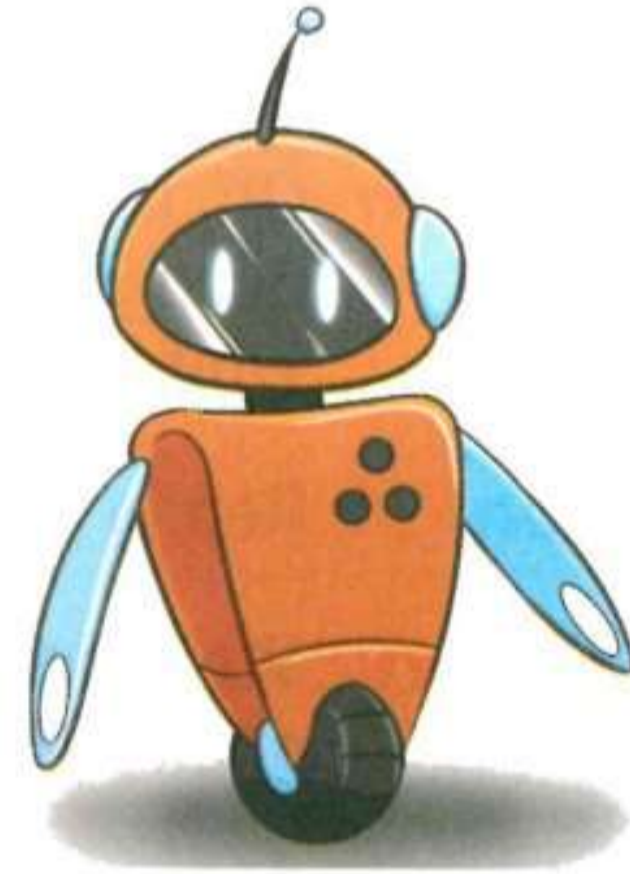
The Day the Bills broke down !

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع و القراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet ! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their chores. However, on this day, a year ago, something terrible happened.

The day started normally. In Australia , some Bills were ironing clothes for their humans to wear to work. In Italy, other Bills were quietly making milkshakes, and others were fixing cars. In Egypt, the Bills were making koshari for the next day's lunch. But then, all over the world, the noise of the robots suddenly stopped. All the Bills suddenly broke down. They fell to the ground, and their lights went out.

One family in Alexandria was shocked when they saw their Bill lying on the kitchen floor. They tried to wake him up. "Bill!" said Mom, "What happened? We're waiting for our koshari !" Bill said nothing. Hesham,



the young son, started crying. "I need a clean uniform tomorrow," he said, "And who is going to iron my school pants ?" "This is awful !" I programmed Bill to fix my car and change the battery in it. What am I going to do ?" Dad said.

Everyone looked very worried, but the daughter, Fareeda, said, "We'll just do some chores ourselves, like people did in the past. We'll go on the internet and find out how to do things. That's what Granddad told me people used to do."

The family started trying to learn things from videos. They learned how to use a blender and had milkshakes. Mom learned how to use the microwave so they could heat some food. They didn't really like that because Bill normally made the meals for the family. Dad tried to learn how to fix his car, but it was too difficult. And he certainly didn't understand how to change the car battery - that was very complicated. Hesham did well ! He quickly learned how to iron his own clothes for school !

Luckily, a computer engineer solved the problem the next day, and all the Bills started working again. The Bills in Egypt were busily cleaning cars, ready for work on Sunday. Life was normal again. However, the humans are now ready - in case the Bills break down again one day ...



Test 7

on Lessons 3&4

نصوص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة فى اختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Electricity is most in our free time.
a. bad b. useful c. tired d. messy
2. I do homework on my
a. phone b. computer c. laptop d. TV
3. I play video with my brother.
a. desks b. games c. films d. plays
4. I love to watch television with my
a. friends b. classmate c. grandma d. grandpa

(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2024)

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

desk – electricity – whiteboard – outage – cable

My name is Mariam. I had a strange day at school yesterday. My class and I had a power [1] ! We were looking at the interactive [2], when suddenly all the information disappeared. We got an extension [3] and tried a different power socket, but that wasn't working either. We knew that there was no [4] (Menoufia - Menouf 2024)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In the year 2089, every family around the world has a Bill robot which does all their chores. However, one day at midnight, all the Bills broke down and they weren't able to do any chores ! The Bills fell on the ground and their lights went out. Everyone was very worried ! One family in Alexandria didn't know what to do. The daughter, Fareeda, wanted to look for information on the internet. So, they watched lots of videos and they soon learned a lot of different things. They learned how to use the blender to make milkshakes, and Mom learned how to heat food in the microwave. Dad tried to **fix** his car and battery, but he couldn't. It was too difficult. However, Fareeda's brother, Hesham learned how to iron his clothes for school.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The best title for the text is "".
a. Future jobs b. House chores
c. Life without robots d. Car accident

2. The underlined word "fix" means
a. damage b. repair c. sell d. design

3. Fareeda's family lives in
a. London b. Japan c. Australia d. Egypt

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Why is the Bill robot important for every family ?

.....

5. What did Fareeda's brother learn to do ?

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to fix – the robot – I – my – programmed – car.

.....

2. things – can't – What – we do – electricity – without ?

.....

3. at- the - use - interactive – Teachers – whiteboard – schools .

.....

5 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Why is electricity important ?"

Guiding elements:

- opinion
- electricity
- free time
- laptop
- kitchen
- electric kettle

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

(Minya - Mallawi 2024)



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

mop up the water	يجفف المياه	collar	طوق [حول الرقبة]
pick up the books	يجمع الكتب	claws	مخالب
tidy up my room	أرتب غرفتي	florist	بائع الزهور
put away the dishes	يضع الأطباق في مكانها	fertilizer	سماد
hang up the clothes	يُعلق الملابس	scratch post	عمود خدش
clean up the kitchen	ينظف المطبخ	curious	فضولي - محب للاستطلاع
put out the garbage	يُخرج القمامة	underneath	في الأسفل / تحت
stroke	يلاطف / يداعب	childhood	طفولة
sharpen	يُحِد	brick	قالب من الطوب
spray	يرش	attic	سقيفة [غرفة علوية للتخزين]

• Extra vocabulary

pet	حيوان أليف	message	رسالة	space	مساحة - مسافة
chin	ذقن	glad	مسرور - مبتهج	temperature	درجة الحرارة
warm	دافئ	pull	يجذب - يسحب	indoor	داخلي
equipment	معدات	owner	مالك	prefer	يفضل
gently	برفق - بلطف	closely	بدقة - بعناية	perfect	مثالي - ممتاز
wooden pole	عمود خشبي	amount	كمية	instructions	تعليمات
treatment	علاج	leather	جلد	vacation	عطلة - إجازة
dining table	شُفرة المائدة	couch	أريكة [كنبة]	downstairs	الطابق السفلي
attention	عناية - اهتمام	full	ممتلئ - مكتمل	dust	يزيل الغبار
assistant	مساعد	instructional guide	دليل إرشادي	vaccination	تطعيم
memories	ذكريات	spare room	غرفة مخصصة للضيوف	furry	مغطى بالفراء
great-grandmother			الجددة الكبرى		

• **Conjugation of irregular verbs** تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
dig يحفر	dug	dug
give يعطي	gave	given
feed يُطعم	fed	fed
grow يزرع	grew	grown
say يقول	said	said
tell يخبر	told	told
write يكتب	wrote	written
hang يُعلق	hung	hung

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
curious	interested, feeling you want to know more
brick	a small block for building
shocked	very surprised
great-grandmother	the mother of your grandparent
spare room	a room that is used for visitors or to put things in
kitten	a baby cat

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look after	يعتني بـ	interested in	مهتم بـ
try on	يقيس [ملابس ...]	give some advice	يعطي بعض النصائح
feel at home	يشعر كأنه في موطنه	make sure	يتأكد
get lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	remove bugs	يزيل حشرات
jump off	يقفز من على	go into = enter	يدخل
Let's go up	دعنا نصعد	used for	يستخدم لـ
at the end of	في نهاية	belong to	يخص - ينسب / ينتمي إلى
in the walls	في الجدران		

**► Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. The garbage can is , so I need to put out the garbage.
a. fall b. empty c. full d. clean
2. Cats are very This means that they have a lot of soft hair.
a. furry b. wild c. dangerous d. lazy
3. We must give our children lots of and look after them.
a. money b. sweets c. candies d. attention
4. The cat needs a scratch post to its claws.
a. cut b. sharpen c. slice d. spray
5. The vet gives my cat to stop it from getting sick.
a. collar b. pole c. vaccination d. claws
6. I can sit and sleep on a in the living room.
a. shelf b. couch c. table d. cupboard
7. I wrote my cat's name and address on its
a. head b. tail c. collar d. claws
8. We can buy beautiful plants from the
a. shoemaker b. florist c. vet d. bookseller
9. You should read the carefully before using this appliance.
a. recipe b. jokes c. instructions d. songs
10. My brother is , he wants to know more about different things.
a. lazy b. curious c. boring d. kind
11. A is a small block used for building houses.
a. post b. pole c. brick d. cube
12. A room is a room that is used for visitors.
a. dining b. spare c. living d. bath
13. The is a baby cat.
a. lion b. tiger c. kitten d. puppy
14. My cat ran through a in the wall.
a. hole b. card c. hall d. box
15. I read the story carefully to get the of it.
a. words b. message c. smell d. taste

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Lesson 6

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Caring for your cat	attention	Give your cat lots of attention.
	stroke	You should stroke your cat.
	sleep - warm	Cats like to sleep in a warm, comfortable bed.
	couch	Cats sometimes sleep on the couch.
	meals	Cats like small meals at different times
	scratch post	A cat needs a scratch post.
	sharpen its claws	A cat sharpens its claws on a scratch post.
	collar	A collar with the cat's name and address is a good idea.
Caring for your turtle	vet	Cats should go to the vet once a year.
	eat - flowers	Turtles like to eat flowers and plants.
	buy - food	You can buy special turtle food.
	turtles - space	Turtles need a very large space for their home.
	need - bigger place	A bigger turtle needs a bigger space.
	soil - dig	Turtles need clean soil to dig in it.
	heat lamp	They sometimes need a heat lamp.
	sleep - temperature	Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Lesson 6

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع و القراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Caring for your cat

How can I make my cat feel at home ?

Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe. You should stroke it. This means that you should move your hand over its back, or under its chin - cats love this !

Where do cats like sleeping ?

They like a warm, comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the couch ! Don't wake it up - cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day !



What do cats eat ?

They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't have much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better.

What equipment does a cat need ?

A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on. Cats also like toys to play with. A collar with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost, somebody can bring it home to you.

How often should cats go to the vet ?

Cats should go to the vet once a year for vaccinations. These stop them from getting sick.

If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new furry friend in your life !



A cat sharpening its claws

Caring for your turtle

- These animals like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special turtle food.
- Turtles need a very large space for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space ! They need clean soil to dig in, too.
- They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.
- Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.



Caring for your indoor plants

Where can I buy an indoor plant ?

You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets, florists, and garden centers. These are stores that sell many different plants. It might be best to buy from a garden center as the assistants know how to look after the plants and they can give you some useful advice. Make sure you know what your plant is called so you can find out more about it.

Where should I put my indoor plant ?

Some plants need to be in a warm, sunny place with a lot of light, while others prefer a cool place that isn't sunny. Look on the internet to find the best place for your plant. Most plants don't like you to move them. So, find the perfect place and leave it there.

Do plants need food ?

Yes ! The best time to feed your plant is spring and summer. Feed them



with fertilizer. This is special plant food. Read the instructions carefully, because too much fertilizer can be bad for plants.

How often should I water the plant ?

Some plants don't need much water and others need more. You can check the internet for more information. If you don't know, it's better to give them too little water than too much.

How should I clean my indoor plant ?

Use a soft brush or cotton cloth to dust the leaves. This means that you clean dry dirt from the leaves. For plants with thicker leaves, spray them with water and this will keep them healthy.

Did you know ?

If you keep your plants happy and healthy, they will live for many years.

Lesson 7

The special house

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع و القراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Sameh and Nadine were on school vacation at home with their parents. One morning,

Sameh was in the living room, playing with his new kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small hole in the wall! Sameh put his hand through the hole to get her, but all he could feel was some paper.

He pulled the paper - it was very old. On it, there was a message in a child's writing : Hello, I'm Monira ! I live here. Sameh felt very curious.

The next day, it was raining. Sameh and his sister, Nadine, were feeling bored.

"Let's go up and look in the spare room," Sameh said.

In the spare room, they found some old boxes. Sameh looked in one of the boxes and found a little house and a doll. The doll was beautiful, and underneath, there was a birthday card : To Monira on your birthday, much love, Grandma. Just then, their Dad called them downstairs.

"Dad !" said Sameh. "Who is Monira ?". Dad looked shocked.

"Why are you asking that ?" he said.

"Look at this doll and this card !" replied Sameh.

"I don't believe it !" said Dad, looking at the things. "Let me tell you about the history of this house. It was built from bricks and stone in the 1950s. My grandma - your great-grandmother - lived here with her mom, dad, and five brothers and sisters."

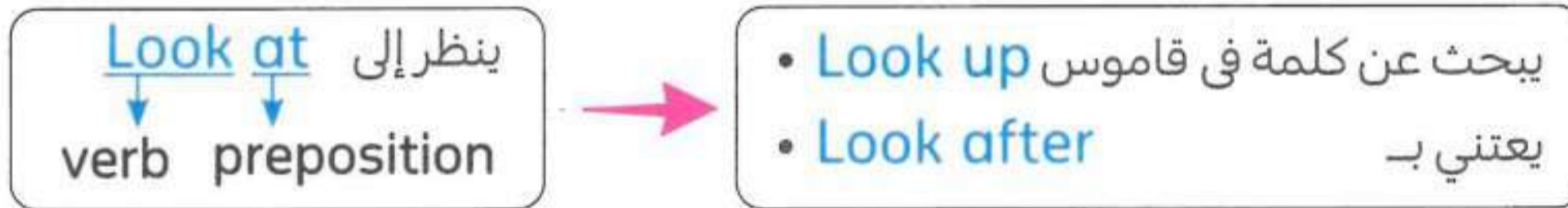


"Wow ! Do you think the house was very small for them ?" said Nadine.
 "Yes," said Dad. "There were eight people and only three bedrooms !"
 "Do you think they were happy ?" asked Sameh.
 "I think they were very happy, just like we are" said Dad.
 "But is the house different now ?" asked Nadine.
 "Well," said Dad, "not really. The walls are a different color, but I think that's all. I'm glad it hasn't changed because I have such great memories of growing up here too."
 "But you still haven't told us who Monira is !" said Sameh.
 "Well, you already know her," said Dad. "Monira was your great-grandmother - Granddad's mom ! I guess you have never heard her first name before.
 The things that you found are from her childhood. I'm so happy we have them ! Thank you two !"

III Language

Phrasal verbs : الأفعال الاصطلاحية :

A phrasal verb is a verb followed by a preposition, such as up, over, in, on, away.
 • الأفعال الاصطلاحية هي عبارة عن فعل متبوع بحرف جر أو حال مثل **up** بمعنى [فوق]، **over** بمعنى [على]، **in** بمعنى [في]، **on** بمعنى [على]، **away** بمعنى [بعيدًا].
 • **لاحظ أن:** قد يتغير معنى الفعل إذا تم إضافة حرف جر له.



Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية	• mop up	• cut out	• pick up
	• hang up	• put out	• tidy up
	• put away	• clean up	

• إليك بعض الأمثلة على الأفعال الاصطلاحية لتوضيح ما سبق شرحه.

Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة
mop up	يجفف	- She mopped up the juice on the floor.
hang up	يعلق	- I'll hang up my clothes before I go to bed.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. We need to clean the floor.
a. away b. up c. on d. out
2. She always tidies her room in the evening.
a. away b. out c. off d. up
3. Can you put the garbage ?
a. down b. on c. up d. out
4. Please, help me pick the books.
a. up b. off c. down d. on
5. Can you put the dishes after dinner ?
a. on b. in c. away d. of
6. I'll mop the water on the floor. Don't worry.
a. out b. up c. in d. away
7. Your clothes are everywhere, please hang them
a. in b. out c. up d. down
8. You need to pick your toys from the floor.
a. under b. for c. up d. in
9. My mom up the clothes after she irons them.
a. hangs b. picks c. mops d. cleans
10. We will our house after the party.
a. put out b. hang up c. tidy up d. pick up

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



1. She is cleaning [of] the kitchen.
2. He has put [over] his clothes and now the room is tidy.
3. They are tidying [on] the living room together.
4. My dad puts [in] the garbage every day.
5. Can you help me hang [off] my clothes in the cupboard, please ?
6. The floor is wet. Mop it [in], please.
7. I will clean [on] my room tomorrow.
8. Would you like me to mop [down] the juice ?
9. We'll help you tidy [of] your bedroom.
10. She will pick [away] her son's toys after he sleeps.

IV Writing skill

Definitions

► Use definitions to explain what you mean :

استخدم التعريفات لشرح ما تقصده

- When we are writing, we can use **This is** , or **This means that** to explain words to the reader.

• عندما نقوم بالكتابة يمكننا استخدام "**This is**" بمعنى [هذا يكون] أو [**This means that**] بمعنى [هذا يعني أنّ] لشرح كلمات للقارئ.

- Use **This is** before a noun phrase, for example :

• استخدم "**This is**" قبل عبارة اسمية مثل.

- A cat needs a scratch post. **This is** a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on.

- Use **This means that** before a full sentence with a subject and a verb :

• استخدم [**This means that**] قبل جملة كاملة تتكون من فاعل و فعل.

- Stroke it. **This means that** you should move your hand over its back or under its chin-cats love this!



Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

► Circle the correct answer.

1. Cats are very furry. **This means that** / **This is** they have a lot of soft fur.
2. Camels can live in the desert. **This means that** / **This is** a dry area of land covered with sand.
3. Feed your plants with fertilizer. **This means that** / **This is** special food for plants.
4. You have to water your plants gently. **This means that** / **This is** you add the water slowly.
5. You can buy flowers from a florist. **This means that** / **This is** a person who sells flowers.

Lists

- When writing lists, remember to add commas.

عندما تكتب قائمة، تذكر أن تضيف الفاصلة السفلية بين العناصر المختلفة.

ex. Plants need sunlight, space, fertilizer and water.

• Instructional guide :

دليل إرشادي :

Tips to write an instructional guide :

نصائح لكتابة دليل إرشادي :

1. Write a short question as a heading for each paragraph.
١. اكتب سؤال قصير كعنوان رئيسي لكل فقرة إنشائية.
2. Set your information in clear, short paragraphs.
٢. ضع معلوماتك في فقرات قصيرة واضحة.
3. Write definitions for difficult words.
٣. اكتب تعريفات للكلمات الصعبة.

► Write an instructional guide for a pet.

Caring for your pet

1. How can I make my pet feel at home ?

.....
.....

2. Where does your pet like sleeping ?

.....
.....

3. What does your pet eat ?

.....
.....

4. What equipment does your pet need ?

.....
.....

5. How often should your pet go to the vet ?

.....
.....



Interactive Homework Notebook

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي
- تمكّنك من إتقان المفردات اللغوية (التسميع)
- والقواعد اللغوية وتدريب على الوحدات

Test 8

on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

نصوص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة فى اختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Turtles like to eat
a. honey b. flowers c. grapes d. corn
2. Turtles need very large space for their
a. eggs b. babies c. home d. toys
3. Turtles need soil to dig in it.
a. hard b. dry c. soft d. clean
4. Turtles sometimes need a to keep them warm.
a. fire b. blanket c. shells d. heat lamp

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

meals – sharpen – attention – money – care

Fatma : Hello Noha, is this your cat ?

Noha : Yes, it is called Monda.

Fatma : I like cats, but I don't know how I [1] for them.

Noha : Cats need a lot of [2] to feel safe.

Fatma : When do they eat ?

Noha : They like small [3] at different times in the day.

Fatma : What equipment does a cat need ?

Noha : A cat needs a scratch post to [4] its claws.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Dogs are my favorite animals and I think they are the best pets. They are cute with soft fur which is nice to touch. They have either long or short fur. They are strong animals and they are usually friendly. They like people and they love to go out, so I need to take them for a walk every day. They like to play with me every day. Dogs have strong claws and sharp teeth. People also say that when you pet a dog, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well being, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about " "
a. Cats b. Dogs c. Lions d. Elephants
2. "pets" means animals we have at
a. school b. work c. home d. night
3. Dogs have strong claws and teeth.
a. big b. slow c. long d. sharp

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What makes you happy ?
.....

5. How often do you take them for a walk ?
.....

(Suez - North Suez)

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- I'll put the dishes after I wash them.
a. away b. in c. up d. out
- They are tidying the living room for the party .
a. out b. up c. on d. away
- My dad puts the garbage every day.
a. up b. out c. on d. off
- Can you hang my jacket, please ?
a. of b. up c. in d. at
- I mopped the water from the floor.
a. up b. out c. on d. away
- Would you like me to up the toys ?
a. hang b. tidy c. go d. mop

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- find - in - the spare - What - they - room - did ?
.....
- up - the - She - kitchen - cleaned - yesterday .
.....
- scratch - a - My - post - cat - needs .
.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The special house"

Guiding elements:

- How old is your home ?
- Who has lived there ?
- Where is your home ?
- How has your home changed ?

.....
.....
.....
.....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Make logical inferences from the text



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في وضع استنتاج منطقي لبعض المعلومات وقد تكون الإجابة غير موجودة في النص بشكل مباشر.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على فهم النص جيدًا لأن الإجابة قد تكون غير موجودة بشكل مباشر في النص وتكون استنتاج للمعلومات الواردة.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer.

Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor.

The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.

Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.

شرح الحل

تقوم المعلومات الواردة فيما من استنتاج معلومات أخرى مثلاً:

• ستيفن استنق ٣ إقتراعه العرير (القلاط) في صناعة العليب المفقوق فنستنج من ذلك أنه يعب العليب المفقوق من المشروبات.
• استنق ٣ ركتور هوناس سالك أهوزة القلاط في صناعة اللقاح فنستنج من ذلك أنه مفير في الطب.

1. Do you think Stephen liked milkshakes? Why?

- Yes, because he used his new invention to make milkshakes.

2. Why do you think the blenders are useful in medicine?

- Because Jonas used them to make a vaccine.

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions.

Cats like a warm, comfortable bed but sometimes they just sleep on the couch! Don't wake them up - cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day!

They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't have much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better.

A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on. Cats also like toys to play with. A collar with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost, somebody can bring it home to you.

1. Do you think cats like sleeping on a cold, hard floor?

.....

2. Why do you think it is a good idea to write the cat's name and address on a collar?

.....

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.



التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [غرفة النوم الخاصة بي] و [الاعتناء بالقطط] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.



مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها في تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

Write the meaning :

..... يتشارك
 شقة سكنية
 مكتب
 غرفة النوم
 هويات
 مريح
 ألعاب لوجية

..... يداعب - يلاطف
 اهتمام
 وجبات
 اللقاح - التطعيم
 يحد - يجعله حاد
 طوق [حول الرقبة]

Step 2 Sentences

Complete the sentences :

1. We moved to a new last week.
2. I love my new because it is a very comfortable room.
3. I my room with my sister.
4. We have a long for our PCs.
5. We play in our bedroom.
6. We have space for our like reading and video games.

1. Give your cat lots of to feel safe.
2. You should your cat over its back or under its chin.
3. Cats like to eat small at different times.
4. A cat needs a scratch post to its claws on.
5. Cats should go to the vet for once a year.

Step 3 Topics

Write a paragraph using the sentences :

"Your bedroom"

.....

Write an instructional guide using the sentences :

"Carting for your cat"

.....

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٥٦ جملة].

1 A description of a room

We moved into a new apartment last month^[1]. I'm happy because I have a new room^[2]. My new room is large, light and more comfortable^[3]. I share it with my brother, Hassan^[4]. We are always good friends^[5]. We have a long desk for PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom^[6]. When we finish our homework, we can play computer games in our room^[7]. We watch cartoons with our friends, too^[8].

2 Amazing appliances

I think the blender is one of the most important appliances in the kitchen^[9]. It is made by a Polish - American man^[10]. He is called Stephen^[11]. He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass^[12]. When the blade turns, it chops the food^[13]. He added a small motor which turned the blade to blend the food together^[14]. He used his new invention to make milkshakes^[15].

3 A strange day

I'd like to tell you about a strange day^[16]. Yesterday, it was a strange day^[17]. We had a power outage in our school^[18]. My class and I were looking at the interactive whiteboard^[19]. Suddenly, all the information disappeared^[20]. First, Mr Amr asked us all to sit in a circle and talk about the electricity^[21]. We knew that electricity is important in our lives^[22]. It was a really interesting discussion^[23].

4 A special party

It's Grandma's birthday next week^[24]. We're organizing a special party for her^[25]. It'll be a big surprise if we don't tell her^[26]. We'll bring her a lot of presents^[27]. Mom is going to cook lots of special food^[28]. If the weather is not too hot, we'll all eat outside^[29]. I'm helping my sister to make a cake^[30]. Dad is buying some special decorations for the house^[31]. Everyone will come to our house an hour before lunch^[32]. It's going to be great^[33].

5 Caring for your cat

Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe^[34]. You should move your hand over its back, or under its chin^[35]. Cats love this^[36]! They like a warm, comfortable bed^[37]. Don't wake it up - cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day^[38]! They like small meals at different times in the day^[39]. If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new furry friend in your life^[40]!

6 The special house

From:

To:

Subject:

Hi Hana,
How are you^[41]? Let me tell you about this special house^[42]. It was built from bricks and stone^[43]. My grandma lived here with her mom, and five brothers and sisters^[44]. There were eight people and only three bedrooms^[45]. The house is different now^[46]. The walls are of different color, but I think that's all^[47]. I'm glad it hasn't changed because I have such great memories of growing up here, too^[48].

Yours,
Huda

7 Caring for your turtle

From:

To:

Subject:

Hi Taha,
I'm glad to send you this email^[49]. How are you and your family^[50]? I send you this email to tell you about how to care for your turtle^[51]. These animals like to eat flowers and plants^[52]. Turtles need a very large space for their home^[53]. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space^[54]! They need clean soil to dig in, too^[55]. They also need a heat lamp to keep them nice and warm^[56].

Yours,
Tarek

Review on Unit 2

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثانية في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

appliance	آلة - جهاز	apartment	شقة سكنية
blade	شفرة	break down	يتعطل
motor	محرك	interactive whiteboard	السبورة التفاعلية
vaccine	لقاح	robot	إنسان آلي
power outage	انقطاع التيار الكهربائي	humans	البشر
electricity	كهرباء	sharpen	يحد
swap	يتبادل	collar	طوق [حول الرقبة]
battery	بطارية	florist	بائع الزهور

Language

1 The first conditional : الحالة الشرطية الأولى :

► **Uses :** الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about future situations.

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لتحدث عن مواقف مستقبلية.

► **Formation :** التكوين



ex - I will arrive early if the bus comes in time.

2 Phrasal verbs : الأفعال الاصطلاحية :

A phrasal verb is a verb followed by a preposition, such as up, over, in, on, away.

Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية	• mop up	• cut out	• pick up
	• hang up	• put out	• tidy up
	• put away	• clean up	

ex. - I will tidy up my room.

Test 9 on Unit 2

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

• نصوص الاستماع
• فى نهاية الكتاب.
• التقييمات الشهرية
• فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sameh and Nadine were on school
a. garden b. trip c. vacation d. journey
2. Sameh was playing with his new
a. parrot b. kitten c. puppy d. car
3. It jumped off the chair and ran through a in the wall.
a. corner b. fan c. shelf d. hole
4. Sameh felt when he found the message.
a. curious b. afraid c. worried d. comfortable

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

lesson - extension - power - interactive - excited

Mariam is in primary six. While Mariam was at school, there was a [1] cut. The information disappeared from the [2] whiteboard. Miss Amira put the [3] cable into a different socket but it didn't work. Miss Amira couldn't teach the [4] she planned. Miss Amira asked the children to talk about how important electricity is in our lives.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi, Layla
It's Grandma's birthday next week and we're organizing a special party for her. If we don't tell her, it'll be a big surprise. Uncle Amir and his family are arriving on Friday. If they bring lots of presents, we'll hide them in my room. Mom is going to cook lots of special food. If the weather is not too hot, we'll all eat outside. I'm helping my sister to make a cake. We're going to use mom's new food mixer. Dad is buying some special decorations for the house. It will look really pretty when we put lots of lights around the living room. Everyone will come to our house an hour before lunch. Then Dad will drive to Grandma's house to collect her. It's going to be great!
Love,
Samira

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. What is the email about ?
a. Samira's grandparents b. New presents
c. Grandma's birthday d. New house
2. The underlined word "pretty" means
a. excited b. ugly c. beautiful d. hidden
3. Guests will come to their house
a. before lunch b. before dinner c. after lunch d. after dinner

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Who is making the cake ?
.....

5. How will they make the house pretty ?
.....

• **4 The Reader**

A. Read and write YES or NO.

- 1. When Asser opened the car trunk, he saw clean clothes. [.....]
- 2. Mom told Mayar to remember her guitar for pottery classes. [.....]
- 3. Mom and Mayar chose an audiobook to listen. [.....]
- 4. Asser saw his dad's shovel outside the garage. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who did Asser want to come to the concert ?
.....

2. Why did Asser go to the garage ?
.....

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- 1. I think we have to clean the kitchen. It's really messy.
a. out b. down c. off d. up
- 2. If I have enough money, I buy a new phone.
a. would b. will c. could d. am
- 3. If Nadia practice well, she won't win the match.
a. don't b. doesn't c. isn't d. wasn't
- 4. If you mix blue and yellow, you green.
a. gets b. got c. get d. to get
- 5. You have one hour to tidy your bedroom.
a. in b. out c. up d. away
- 6. If you touch that wire, you will an electric shock.
a. getting b. get c. gets d. to get

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. can't - battery - She - car - change - the.
.....

2. friends - watching - I - with my - like - cartoons.
.....

3. favorite - appliance - your - What - kitchen - is ?
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Caring for your cat

Guiding elements:

- attention
 - comfortable
 - meals
 - furry friend
-

Test 10 on Unit 2

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is
a. salty b. hard c. sweet d. spicy
2. Every family has a Bill
a. robot b. motor c. ring d. door
3. The Bill robot works for 24 hours a
a. week b. month c. year d. day
4. The Bill robots do all families'
a. exercises b. chores c. clothes d. milkshake

(Beni Suef - Nasser 2024)

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

sleep – wet – friend – back – warm

Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe. You should move your hand over its [1], or under its chin. Cats love this! They like a [2], comfortable bed. Don't wake it up - cats need to [3] for about 15 hours every day! They like small meals at different times in the day. If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new furry [4] in your life!

(Giza – warraq 2024)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie with fruit and ice! I use it for making milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make delicious soups, too. Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes. Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine. Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can heat food, too!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about ".....".
a. Kitchens b. Smoothie c. Blenders d. Milkshake
2. The underlined word "delicious" means tastes
a. good b. cold c. soft d. hot
3. There are blenders made of
a. paper b. plastic c. stone d. blade

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What happens if people have a vaccine ?
.....

5. Who was Jonas Salk ?
.....

(Sharkia - East of zagazig 2024)

• **4 The Reader**

A. Read and write Yes or No.

1. Asser found muddy boots in the car. (Sohag - Maragheh 2024) [.....]
2. Asser saw his father waiting at the school gate. (Kafr El-Sheikh - Educational supervision 2024) [.....]
3. Asser went to the garage to get his guitar. (Suez - Educational supervision 2024) [.....]
4. Asser wanted his mom and dad to go to the concert. (Cairo - Zyton 2024) [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. When did Mayar's parents learn Braille ? (Sharkia - west Zagazig 2024)
.....
2. Who picked up Asser and Mayar from school ? (Al-Beheira - Bandar Kafr Al-Dawwar 2024)
.....

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. You will sick if you get a lot of chocolate. (Sohag - Maragha Tahta 2024)
a. be b. was c. being d. are
2. Your clothes are everywhere, please hang them (Cairo - Mostaqbal 2024)
a. in b. out c. up d. down
3. If I see Ahmed, I can him to call you. (Qena - Doshna 2024)
a. asked b. asks c. ask d. asking
4. If she late, we won't go to the cinema. (Port Said , South Port Said 2024)
a. comes b. come c. coming d. came
5. Can you put the garbage ? (Luxor - Asna 2024)
a. down b. on c. up d. out
6. If he runs, he catch the train. (Beheira - Kom Hamada 2024)
a. should b. could c. would d. will

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. the - did - learn - What - family - from - videos ? (Suez - South Suez 2024)
.....
2. a blender - She - to - milkshake - used - make. (Cairo - Al-Basateen 2024)
.....
3. curious - to know - right - I - the - was - answer. (Cairo - Sahel 2024)
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The chores you and your family do every weekend"

Guiding elements:

(Cairo - Downtown / Menoufia - Tala 2024)

- tidy up • mop up • hang up • pick up
-

Review 1 on Units 1 & 2

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ١ و ٢

I Vocabulary

Unit 1

creative	مبدع	messy	فوضوي	shiny	لامع
exhibition	معرض - عرض	disappear	يختفي	metal	معدن
junk modeling	تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة	uncomfortable	غير مريح	talented	موهوب
jewelry	مجوهرات	relaxing	مريح	musician	موسيقيار
making a collage	صناعة الأعمال الفنية من الملصقات	cheer	يهتف	actor	ممثل
pottery	صناعة الأواني الفخارية	breath	نفس	award	جائزة
clay	صلصال	flash	وميض	nervous	متوتر
beads	خرز	sculptor	نحات	apron	مريلة
sculpture	فن النحت - تمثال منحوت	reflect	يعكس	kiln	فرن للخزف
animation	رسوم متحركة	pattern	نمط - شكل	audience	جمهور

Unit 2

sporty	رياضي	refrigerator	ثلاجة	collar	طوق [حول الرقبة]
cartoons	رسوم متحركة	blender	خلاط	furry	مغطى بالفراء
comic books	كتب مصورة مضحكة	power outage	انقطاع التيار الكهربائي	claws	مخالب
swap	يتبادل	extension cable	وصلة سلك	florist	بائع زهور
chess	لعبة الشطرنج	electricity	كهرباء	fertilizer	سماد
push-up	تمارين الضغط	shocked	مصدوم	vaccination	تطعيم
apartment	شقة سكنية	battery	بطارية	pet	حيوان أليف
appliance	جهاز - آلة	chores	الأعمال المنزلية	curious	فضولي
blade	شفرة	attention	اهتمام - عناية	childhood	طفولة
invention	اختراع	stroke	بلاطف - يداعب	scratch post	عمود خدش
vaccine	لقاح	sharpen	يحد	treatment	علاج

Unit 1

Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

► **Uses :** الاستخدام

نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق والأشياء الحقيقية بالنسبة لنا :

► **Formation :** التكوين

Statement
الجملة الخبرية

→ **If** إذا / **When** عندما + **present simple** , ... **present simple / can + inf.**

ex. - **If / When** people **have** a toothache, they **go** to the dentist.

If / When + مضارع بسيط + **imperative** صيغة الامر

ex. - **Study** hard **if** you **want** to succeed.
- **If** you **are** sick, **go** to the doctor.

Wh- Q.

السؤال بـ [أداة استفهام]

→ **Q.W. + do / does + subj. + inf. + if / when + ...** مضارع بسيط ؟

ex. - What **do** you do **if / when** you **are** late for school ?

Unit 2

1 The first conditional : الحالة الشرطية الأولى

► **Uses :** الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about future situations.

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن مواقف مستقبلية.

► **Formation :** التكوين

Statement
الجملة الخبرية

If + **present simple tense** , **subject** + **will ('ll) / can / may** + **[inf.]**
إذا / لو + زمن المضارع البسيط ، الفاعل + مصدر الفعل

ex. - I **may buy** a new bike **if** I **have** enough money.

2 Phrasal verbs : الأفعال الاصطلاحية

Phrasal verbs

الأفعال الاصطلاحية

• mop up

• hang up

• put away

• cut out

• put out

• clean up

• pick up

• tidy up

ex. - She **cleans up** her room once a week.

Test 11 on Units 1 & 2

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
 1. You can buy plants from supermarkets and florists.
a. sunny b. indoor c. cold d. outdoor
 2. It might be best to buy from a
a. mall b. florist c. supermarket d. garden center
 3. Assistants at the garden center can give you some useful
a. time b. money c. seeds d. advice
 4. Make sure you know what your is called.
a. house b. seed c. plant d. flower

- 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

creative – sculpture – decide – wood – enter

Ayman : Have you heard about the competition ?

Helmy : No. What is it about ?

Ayman : It's for any kind of [1] projects.

Helmy : Would you like to [2] ?

Ayman : Yes. I'm going to make a [3]

Helmy : What material will you use to make it ?

Ayman : I'll use [4]

- 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Yesterday it was raining, so we all stayed at home and cleaned the house. Mom and Dad gave us some chores as a challenge. We all had one hour to do our chores - My brother and I had to tidy up our bedrooms. I had to hang up my clothes, because I sometimes leave them on the chair. My brother had to pick up his books and put them back on the shelf. Dad put out the trash. Mom cleaned up the kitchen and put away the dishes. But then, my little sister tried to mop up the juice from the floor. She spilt her drink, so the floor was very wet ! We all helped to clean it up - just in time !

- A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The best title for the text is ".....".
a. Weekends b. A challenge c. A cold day d. Our school
2. Who put out the trash ?
a. Mom b. Dad c. Sister d. Brother
3. The underlined word "spilt" means.....
a. drank b. dropped c. moved d. cleaned

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Did they succeed in the challenge ?
.....

5. What did the brother do alone ?
.....

• **4 The Reader**

A. Read and write Yes or No.

- 1. Asser has pottery classes. [.....]
- 2. Mayar found some muddy boots on the seat of the car. [.....]
- 3. Asser practiced the piano for the school concert. [.....]
- 4. Mayar has a new book. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

- 1. What did Grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar ?
.....
- 2. What did Mayar and her mom listen to in the car ?
.....

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- 1. I'll tidy my room.
a. up b. off c. out d. away
- 2. A : Hi Mom. Would you like me to up the dishes ? B : Yes, please.
a. mop b. clean c. put d. hang
- 3. If I have enough time, I visit the museum.
a. would b. could c. am d. will
- 4. Don't forget to put the garbage, Sami.
a. out b. away c. up d. down
- 5. If she practice well, she won't win the competition.
a. don't b. doesn't c. isn't d. wasn't
- 6. If you mix blue and yellow, you green.
a. get b. gets c. to get d. getting

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- 1. to - jewelry - Use - beautiful - beads - make.
.....
- 2. does - Anish - What - use - like to - material ?
.....
- 3. love - books - my friends - I - comic - swapping - with.
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.**

Your bedroom

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

- apartment • comfortable • noise • share
-

THEME

2

Myself and others



UNIT

3

School
time!

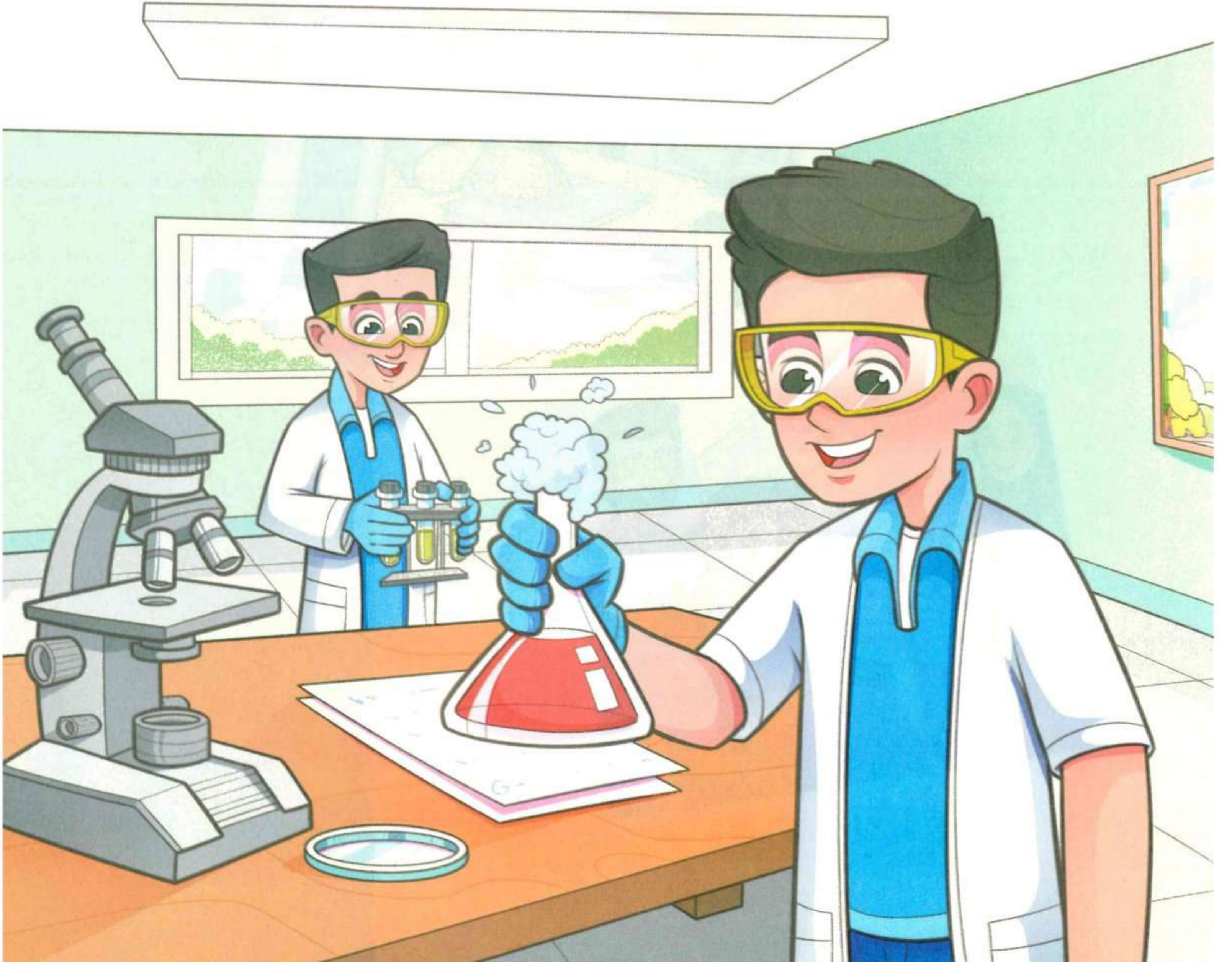
وقت الدراسة !

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثالثة : Aims of Unit Three

In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- read and understand an article about different kinds of classrooms.
- أقرأ وأفهم مقال عن أنواع مختلفة من الفصول الدراسية.
- understand and use words for schools and education.
- أفهم وأستخدم كلمات عن المدارس والتعليم.
- understand and use adverbs of frequency.
- أفهم وأستخدم ظروف التكرار.
- listen to and understand descriptions of school clubs.
- أستمع وأفهم وصف عن النوادي المدرسية.
- use make me + adjective to describe my feelings.
- أستخدم صيغة "make me" يليها الصفة لوصف مشاعري.
- understand and use reported speech.
- أفهم وأستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر.
- read and understand a brochure.
- أقرأ وأفهم كتيب.
- give reasons for my opinion in writing.
- أقدم أسباب لرأيي كتابياً.
- read and understand stories.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصص.





I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

green roofs	أسقف خضراء	boarding school	مدرسة داخلية
nomadic	بدوى	neat	أنيق - مرتب
sleds	زلجات	nomadic school	مدرسة بدوية
mobile	مُتَنَقِّل	timetable	جدول مواعيد
cycle	يركب دراجة	flexible	مرن
school uniform	زي مدرسي موحد	nature	الطبيعة
reindeer	الرنة [نوع من فصيلة الغزلان]	cafeteria	كافتيريا

• Extra vocabulary

middle school المدرسة المتوسطة	grade صف / مرحلة	rainy ممطر
across خلال / عبر	boat قارب	schedule جدول زمني
underground تحت الأرض	education تعليم	topic موضوع
school project مشروع مدرسي	traditional تقليدي	allow يسمح
Siberia سيبيريا [منطقة في روسيا]	computing استعمال الحاسبات	rooftop سقف المنزل
shade ظل	culture ثقافة	floods فيضانات
calm هادئ	Bangladesh بنجلاديش [دولة في جنوب آسيا]	bookcase خزانة كتب
tent خيمة	ICT [Information and Communication Technology]	solar panels الواح شمسية
kindergarten روضة أطفال		تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات

• Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten

• Did you know ?

- There are 787 million children in the world who are old enough to go to elementary school. That's a lot of classes!

• هناك ٧٨٧ مليون طفل في العالم قد وصلوا لسن دخول المدرسة الابتدائية. هذا يعني الكثير من الفصول الدراسية!

• **Study these Definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
mobile	can move
flexible	can change easily
timetable	a schedule with the times of all your school classes on it
boarding school	a school where children live and only go home at vacation times
subject	a topic that you study at school, for example, math, English, history, science
ICT	- a subject where you study and use computers - a subject to teach you computer skills
neat	clean and tidy, not messy or dirty
school uniform	- clothes that are the same for every student - special clothes which students wear to school
cafeteria	a place at school where students can eat lunch

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	go on school trips	يذهب في رحلات مدرسية
on the roof of ...	على سطح ...	get the subway	يستقل مترو الأنفاق
on the top of	على قمة	on a boat	على متن قارب
travel around	يتجول	make electricity	يولد كهرباء
pick up	يحمل ركاب	take the bus	يستقل الاتوبيس
do more writing	يقوم بالمزيد من الكتابة	have to + inf.	يجب أن + [مصدر الفعل]



Pop Quiz

on vocabulary

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



► **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

- Green are gardens on the top of the building.
a. floors b. steps c. pavements d. roofs
- There are flowers and on the roof!
a. plants b. plans c. planets d. planes
- Green outdoor places make us and healthy.
a. nervous b. angry c. calm d. worried
- A is a topic that you study at school.
a. desk b. board c. subject d. classroom
- A schedule with the times of all your school classes on it is called a
a. mobile b. timetable c. vacation d. lesson

6. We can sit and sleep in a when we're in the desert.
a. tent b. boat c. ship d. snowy land
7. A school is the school where children live and only go home at vacation times.
a. flexible b. mobile c. boarding d. near
8. A is a place at school where students eat lunch.
a. playground b. cafeteria c. library d. theater
9. When something is clean and tidy, it's
a. messy b. dirty c. neat d. ugly
10. ICT is a subject to teach you skills.
a. notebook b. computer c. pen d. pencil
11. A school is the special clothes which students wear at school.
a. subject b. room c. uniform d. playground
12. I don't have a bike, so I to school.
a. cycle b. walk c. fly d. swim
13. Cycling is great for the
a. environment b. music c. water d. pollution
14. Walk in the when it is very sunny.
a. water b. sun c. wind d. shade
15. They travel in across the frozen land.
a. tents b. sleds c. boats d. plants

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

	Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Classrooms on the roof		lessons - roof	In Egypt, some students have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school.
		design - gardens	The Shagara at school project designs gardens and green roofs for schools.
		gardens - top	Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building.
		nature - city	Green roofs bring nature into the city.
		clean - air	Green roofs clean and cool the air in the city.
		teaches - plant	The project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden.
		calm - learning	Green outdoors places make us calm and healthy which is great for learning.

Nomadic school	lessons - tents	Some students have their lessons in tents on the ice and snow in Northern Siberia.
	nomadic	Many people in the North of Siberia are nomadic.
	like - one place	Nomadic people don't live in one place.
	sleds - frozen	They travel in sleds across the frozen land and sleep in tents.
	look - reindeer	They look after reindeer.
	classroom - tent	The classrooms are tents on the ice, or mobile rooms on wheels at the nomadic school.
	timetable	The timetable is flexible at the nomadic school.
How does Lilly go to school?	school - travel	Nomadic school travels with the families.
	middle	My name is Lilly and I go to middle school.
	kindergarten	I started kindergarten when I was six.
	ICT	I like ICT. I like using computers.
	uniform	I don't have to wear a school uniform.
	neat	My clothes and my shoes have to be neat.
	get - bus	I sometimes get the bus.
cafeteria	I eat at the school cafeteria.	

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Lesson 1

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Classrooms of the world

Classrooms are not the same in every school. Here are two places where classrooms are a little different.

Classrooms on the roof!

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school!

The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green roofs for schools in Egypt.

Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They



A roof garden in a city

also clean and cool the air. That means that they are great for the environment.

The project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden. They learn about which plants grow well in the hot, dry weather.

In 2017, classes at one school started going to their green roofs for lessons. People at the project thought this was an amazing idea!

In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof. The desks are in the shade, but there are no walls. Students and teachers have space and can see the flowers and plants.

The Shagara at School Project says roof gardens can help students in many city schools. Green outdoor places make us calm and healthy - and that is great for learning.

Classrooms on the move!

In Northern Siberia, some students have their lessons in tents on the ice and snow! Many people in the North of Siberia are nomadic. This means that they don't live in one place. They travel in sleds across the frozen land and sleep in tents. They look after reindeer and take them to where there is food.

So, how do their children get an education ?

There are two ways. First, some children go away to boarding school. These children are away from their families for many months every year. They can't learn traditional skills from their parents, and they often forget their culture's language.

The second way is nomadic school. This is a school which travels with the families. The classrooms are tents on the ice, or mobile rooms on wheels.

The children study school subjects like math, science, and computing. However, they also study their own language and traditional skills. The timetable is flexible, so they can help their families with the chores.

At nomadic school, the children are happy because they can stay with their families and get a good education. They learn everything about how to live in their snowy land!



Nomadic children help to look after reindeer

How does Lilly go to school ?

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in Kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In Kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers!



Lilly, USA

We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

III Language

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار



always



usually



often



sometimes



never

► Usage : الاستخدام

- We can use **adverbs of frequency** with the present simple to say **how often** something happens.

يمكننا أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط لتحديد عدد مرات تكرار حدوث شيء ما.

- They can help to describe habits or routines.

يمكن أن تساعد ظروف التكرار في وصف العادات أو الأعمال الروتينية.

- Adverbs of frequency come before most verbs, but they come after verb to be.

تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل معظم الأفعال ولكن تأتي بعد "verb to be" في الجملة.

ex. I **am never** late for school. - She **often walks** to school.



1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. He walks to school. He takes the bus.
a. never b. always c. sometimes d. usually
2. He late for school.
a. were always b. is always c. always are d. always is
3. It's sunny and hot in July.
a. sometimes b. never c. always d. often
4. I wear my school uniform. It's a school rule.
a. always b. never c. sometimes d. often
5. We to the club.
a. go sometimes b. never goes c. sometimes go d. goes never
6. She studies very hard, so she gets a good grade.
a. always b. sometimes c. never d. doesn't
7. I drink coffee at night. That's unhealthy.
a. usually b. sometimes c. never d. always
8. He always arrives on time. He is late.
a. usually b. always c. never d. often
9. They do sport five times a week. They do sport.
a. never b. sometimes c. usually d. always
10. I don't have a bike, so I cycle to school.
a. sometimes b. always c. never d. usually
11. Dad a book and watches a match in the evening.
a. reads sometimes b. read always
c. sometimes reads d. always read
12. They have lunch together every day. It's their habit.
a. never b. always c. rarely d. sometimes

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. He [sometimes] eats mushrooms. It's his first time.
2. We [always be] at school on time.
3. I always bring my lunch from home, so I [always] buy sandwiches from the cafeteria.
4. We [sometimes] talk on the phone at the classroom. It's a school rule.
5. The manager [always is] busy.
6. Mom [makes sometimes] cookies for breakfast.
7. You can visit the library any time. It is [never] open.



- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
- In Northern Siberia, some students have their lessons in
a. houses b. tents c. caves d. cars
 - Many people in the North of Siberia are
a. traders b. villagers c. nomadic d. giants
 - The nomadic people travel in
a. bikes b. carts c. snowmobiles d. sleds
 - The nomadic people look after
a. reindeer b. foxes c. zebras d. cows
- 2 Read and complete the text / dialogue with the words from the box.

A

subjects – grade – kindergarten – toys – play

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started [1] when I was four. Now I'm 11, and I'm in [2]
6. I like my school. In kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of [3] in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we have many interesting [4], like ICT. I like using computers!

B

cleans – school – roof – tower – environment

Ghada: Did you read the new poster on the school wall?

Rabab: No, Ghada. What's it about?

Ghada: It's about the green [1] at school.

Rabab: What's the green roof?

Ghada: It's a garden on the top of the [2] building.

Rabab: Why are they making it at school?

Ghada: It is very good for the [3]

Rabab: How is it good for the environment?

Ghada: It [4] and cools the air.

- 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Schools around the world want to do the same thing - to give children a good education. In some countries, children start elementary school at seven years old. In other countries, the children are younger.

In other countries in Africa, for example, Kenya, some people have a nomadic culture, where they move from place to place. This means their teacher has to be flexible with the timetable. The teacher chooses subjects which are the most important at different times.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about "Different".
a. countries b. schools c. children d. timetables
2. The opposite of the underlined word "start" is
a. move b. find c. hang d. finish
3. Kenya is a country in
a. Africa b. Asia c. Australia d. America

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What is the importance of schools for children ?
.....
5. How is the school timetable in nomadic areas ?
.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We go to the park on Saturdays. It's really near.
a. doesn't b. always c. never d. don't
2. It rains in August. It's always sunny.
a. always b. usually c. sometimes d. never
3. They the bus to school when it is cold outside.
a. sometimes take b. never takes c. take never d. take always
4. He watches action films. He doesn't like them.
a. always b. usually c. never d. often
5. We lunch at 3 o'clock.
a. often have b. have never c. usually has d. often has
6. He does exercises in the morning. It's his daily habit.
a. never b. sometimes c. always d. ever

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. rooms - are - on - The classrooms - mobile - wheels.
.....
2. and - cool - air - Green roofs - the - clean.
.....
3. go - school - How - he - to - does ?
.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب منه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your school week"

Guiding elements:

- How do you go to school ?
 - When does your school start ?
 - When does your school finish ?
 - What do you do at break ?
-
-

I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

cooking club	نادى الطهى	passionate	شغوف / متحمس
football club	نادى كرة القدم	art club	نادى التربية الفنية
music club	نادى الموسيقى	tournament	دورة رياضية [بطولة]
swimming club	نادى السباحة	drama	دراما / الأدب المسرحى
principal	مدير المدرسة / المسئول	Eco-playground	ملعب صديق للبيئة
demonstration	إيضاح / عرض	open day	يوم مفتوح

• Extra vocabulary

compare	يقارن	recipe book	كتاب طبخ	terrific	رائع - ممتاز
term	فصل دراسى	photography	التصوير	recycle	يعيد تدوير
proud	فخور	encourage	يشجع	chance	فرصة
bike shed	مظلة للدراجات	frame	إطار / سور	persuade	يقنع
harm	يؤذى	nature trail *	ممر طبيعى	a car park	ساحة وقوف السيارات
sort	يصنف	green spaces	مساحات خضراء	tour	جولة
skill	مهارة	presentation	عرض تقديمى	green	صديق للبيئة

• Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
shoot يرمى - يُصَوَّب	shot	shot
meet يقابل	met	met
grow يزرع	grew	grown
find out يكتشف	found out	found out

• **Study these Definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
passionate	having strong feeling
principal	the person in charge of a school
demonstration	when you show other people how to do or make something
encourage	persuade someone to do something by giving them advice or support
Eco-playground	a playground that does not harm the environment

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

head to	يتجه إلى	run a 400 - meter race	يجري في سباق 400 متر
shoot goals	يُصوّب / يسدد أهداف	in charge of	مسئول عن
join in tournaments	ينضم إلى مباريات الدوري	have a concert for	يقيم حفل موسيقي لـ
for the first half hour	لمدة النصف ساعة الاولى	join in friendly matches	يشارك في مباريات ودية
run up and down	يجري ذهاباً وإياباً	take place	يحدث
climb a rope	يتسلق الحبل		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب للقائيب

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



► Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- A/An is a playground that does not harm the environment.
 - solar panels
 - street
 - stony playground
 - Eco-playground
- Playing chess makes me It's wonderful.
 - happy
 - worried
 - sad
 - bored
- Listening to music makes me I feel calm.
 - unhappy
 - relaxed
 - unhealthy
 - hungry
- I learn to draw and paint in club.
 - art
 - science
 - math
 - Arabic

5. Tennis is a great It makes me healthy.
a. sport b. story c. book d. tool
6. Nadia goes to club where they sing songs.
a. art b. math c. music d. science
7. We make nice meals in the club.
a. music b. cooking c. drama d. art
8. We learn plays and them in the drama club.
a. act b. cut c. color d. draw
9. The Green City School wants to help the
a. classrooms b. environment c. uniform d. walls
10. They use panels to make electricity.
a. petrol b. gas c. solar d. oil
11. is the person in charge of a school.
a. Principal b. Plumber c. Partner d. Painter
12. My teacher gave me a second to do the project.
a. roof b. chance c. frame d. park

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

 نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Lesson 3

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
School clubs	practice	Today, we practiced inside for the first half hour.
	up and down	We had to run up and down the playground.
	rope	We climbed a rope.
	race	We ran a 400 - meter race.
	park	Our club went for a walk in the park.
	compare	We compared our photos.
	instrument	They sing songs and play many instruments.
	competitions	He sometimes does competitions.
	drama club	Nader enjoys going to a drama club.
	costumes	They make special costumes for actors to wear.

Lesson 4

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Green City School Open Day	passionate	At Green City School, we are passionate about helping the environment.
	families	New students and their families are welcomed to join our Open Day.
	solar panels	We use solar panels to make electricity.
	recycle	We recycle a lot of paper and plastic.
	Eco-playground	In our Eco-playground the climbing frame is made with recycled materials.
	principal	Parents watch a presentation made by the principal.
	nature trail	There's also a nature trail around the playground in the Green City School.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Lesson 3

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Today we practiced inside for the first half hour. First, we had to run up and down the playground 20 times. Then we climbed a rope. That was really difficult. After that, we ran a 400-meter race outside. I love running but it makes me very tired. After that, we played a game for 15 minutes. It was great. My team won!



Last week, our club went for a walk in the park. When our teacher pointed to an object, we took a photograph of it but we could only take one photo! So, we had to look carefully and decide where to stand. It was fun and it made me excited about the subject. When we compared our photos later, they were really different!



Nadia goes to music club where they sing songs and play instruments. They learn songs from all over the world. At the end of term, they have a concert for their parents.

Samer goes to cooking club. Every week, they make a meal from a different country. They take photos of their meals for a special recipe book. They can take the food home to eat with their families.

Malek goes to swimming club three times a week. It makes him healthy and strong. He sometimes does competitions, too.

Nader enjoys going to drama club. They learn plays and they act them for their parents. Sometimes they make special costumes for the actors to wear.

Art Club!

Everyone knows that art is good for your mind. It makes you relaxed and happy. Come to the art room at 1 pm on Tuesdays to learn to draw and paint.



Tennis is terrific!

Tennis is a great sport. It makes you healthy and happy! We have classes every Wednesday at 4 pm. Join our club to learn a new skill and meet new people!



Lesson 4

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Green City School Open Day

At Green City School, we are passionate about helping the environment. Come and find out why we are the greenest school in the city!

New students and their families are welcome to join us for our Open Day on 25th May.

Open day schedule :

- 9 am** New students and families arrive at the school
Presentation by the principal
- 10 am** Tour of the school buildings

First, see our new Green Library. Why is it green? Because all its electricity comes from solar panels on the roof

Then, we head to the Recycling Room. This is where we can recycle paper, plastic, and other materials. Watch a demonstration about how we sort the waste from our classrooms
After that, come and see our Eco-playground.



Our Green Library

The climbing frame is made mostly with recycled materials. There is also a nature trail around the playground, where we can learn about plants, animals, and insects

12 pm Enjoy a delicious lunch in our School Garden, where we grow our own flowers, fruit, and vegetables

1 pm Any questions? This is your chance to ask the Green School students and teachers! There is a small car park, but we encourage you to walk, cycle, or come by bus!



Our Eco-playground

III Language

Using **make me + adj.** صفة

► **Formation:** النكوين

Subject + make(s) + object مفعول + **adjective** صفة

ex. - I have some friends. → - I'm happy.
= My friends **make me** happy.

► **Usage:** الاستخدام

1. Use **make(s) me** to talk about how you feel because of something or someone.
1. استخدم [**make me**] للحديث عن شعورك بسبب شيء ما أو شخص ما.

2. You can also use **make me** with a verb to talk about how you feel because of an activity.

2. يمكن أن تستخدم [**make me**] مع الفعل للحديث عن شعورك بسبب نشاط ما.

ex. - Watching cartoons **makes me feel** excited.

Note :

• Use the [**verb + -ing**] as the subject of the sentence.

• استخدم [**verb + -ing**] كفاعل للجملة.

ex. - I run. → I get healthy. = **Running makes me** feel healthy.

- I play tennis. → I get healthy.

= **Playing tennis makes me** feel healthy.

• The object can be a noun or a pronoun.

• لاحظ أن : يمكن أن يكون المفعول في الجملة اسم [شخص، شيء، ...] أو ضمير «ضمير مفعول».

ex. - I help **Hani** at school = I help **him** at school.

↓ **object [noun]**

↓ **object [pronoun]**

• **Object pronouns** ضمائر المفعول

Subject pronoun ضمائر الفاعل	I	he	she	it	you	we	they
object pronoun ضمائر المفعول	me	him	her	it	you	us	them



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Playing football makes happy.
a. I b. me c. our d. mine
2. Our friend, Hazem us laugh.
a. to make b. make c. making d. makes
3. Stories children think and imagine.
a. to make b. makes c. make d. making
4. The traffic always us late.
a. makes b. make c. making d. to make
5. Tennis is a great sport. It makes you
a. slowly b. healthy c. health d. slow
6. My brother me angry when he makes noise.
a. make b. making c. made d. makes
7. He tries to make the poor people
a. happy b. happiness c. happily d. happiest
8. much tea makes me sick.
a. Drink b. Drinking c. Drinks d. Drink to
9. A: Your present makes me happy. B: Thank you.
a. felt b. feel c. feeling d. feels
10. Our teacher makes us extra homework when we're late.
a. do b. does c. did d. doing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



1. Green areas [makes] my children happy.
2. Traveling for a long time makes [they] feel tired.
3. Studying math [make] us feel excited.
4. [Stay] in a boarding school makes her feel lonely.
5. Dad always makes [I] proud.
6. Coming late makes our parents [worrying].

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
1. Aya started a new
a. club b. skill c. school d. team
 2. Aya thinks club is great.
a. reading b. music c. art d. cooking
 3. Last week, they made cookies for Eid Al-Fitr.
a. usual b. traditional c. special d. healthy
 4. This week, they are going to make lemon (Giza - Warraq 2024)
a. milkshake b. cookies c. juice d. cake

- 2 Read and complete the text/dialogue with the words from the box :

A

concert - swimming - competitions - recipe - meal

Samer goes to a cooking club. Every week, they make a [1] from a different country. They take photos of their meals for a special [2] book. They can take the food home to eat with their families. Malek goes to a [3] club three times a week. It makes him healthy and strong. He sometimes does [4], too.

(Sharqia - Halia 2024)

B

swimming - favorite - mind - relaxed - art

Mr Adnan: Hello. I'm your new activities teacher.

Mando : Welcome Mr Adnan.

Mr Adnan: I need you to tell me your [1] club.

Mando : I like [2] club.

Mr Adnan: Why do you like art club ?

Mando : Because art is good for my [3]

Mr Adnan: How does it make you feel ?

Mando : Art makes me happy and [4]

- 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mustafa likes sports. He goes to a sports club every weekend. He likes playing football. Football is the most famous sport in the world. Mustafa always plays football with his friends. Playing football makes him healthy and fit. He also loves watching football games on TV. His favorite team is Liverpool. His favorite football player is Mohamed Salah. He is the best football player in the world. Mustafa wants to be like Mohamed Salah when he grows up. His friend Asser likes football, but he is good at tennis. He always plays tennis every weekend. In summer Mustafa and Asser go to Alexandria to spend their summer holiday with their families.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mustafa always plays football with his
a. neighbors b. friends c. family d. teachers
2. The opposite of the underlined word "fit" is
a. healthy b. strong c. weak d. bored
3. Mustafa likes
a. music b. sports c. art d. history

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Where does Mustafa play football ?
.....
5. Who does Mustafa want to be like when he grows up ?
.....

(Minya – Darnawas 2024)

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. How does learning new skill make you ?
a. feeling b. feels c. feel d. to feel
2. my friends at the school makes me happy.
a. Meeting b. Meet c. Meets d. To meet
3. Listening to music me feel relaxed.
a. make b. makes c. to make d. make to
4. Climbing high mountains makes feel nervous.
a. them b. they c. their d. theirs
5. Art makes me feel
a. smile b. happiness c. smiling d. happy
6. Playing football makes happy. (Cairo - Hadayek Al-Qubba 2024)
a. I b. me c. our d. mine

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. would - to - club - like - to - Which - you - go ?
.....
2. tennis - happy - and - Playing - him - healthy - makes.
.....
3. recycle - and - We - paper - plastic - can.
.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

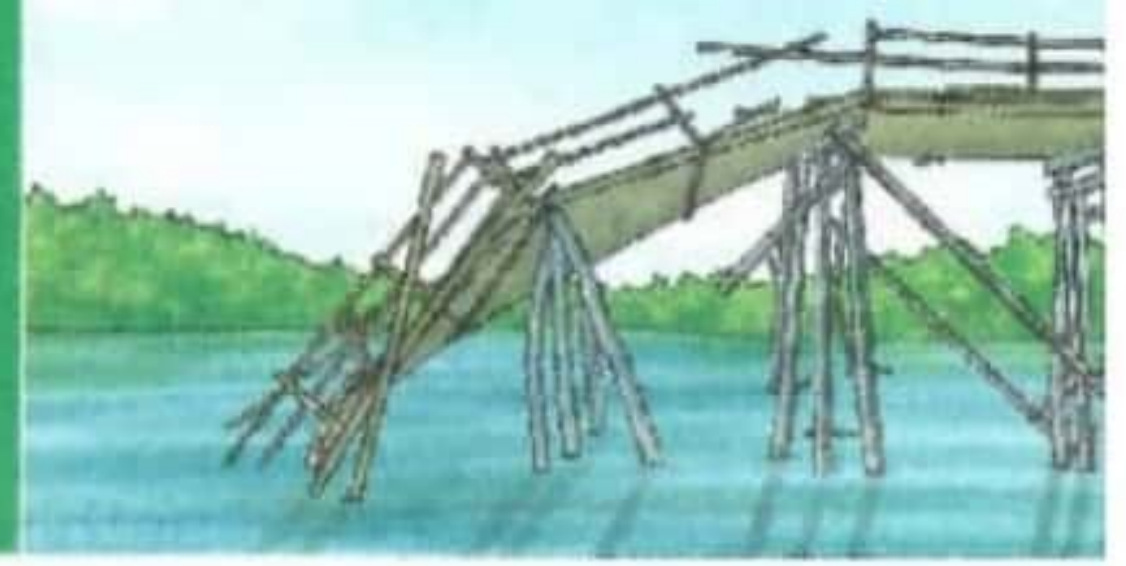
مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Green City School"

Guiding elements :

- environment • solar panels • recycle • sorting waste

.....
.....
.....



I

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

bridge	جسر - كوبرى	sports center	مركز للألعاب الرياضية	repair = fix	يصلح
collapse	ينهار - يسقط			journey	رحلة طويلة
steep	شديد الانحدار	square	ميدان - ساحة	crash	تحطم - اصطدام
society	مجتمع	introduction	مقدمة	scripts	مخطوطات
experiences	خبرات حياتية	main ideas	أفكار رئيسية	poisonous	سام
palace	قصر	scream	بصرخ / صرخة	sore	ملتهب
court	محكمة	scribe	كاتب		
tablet	لوح	papyrus	ورق البردى		

• Extra vocabulary

awake	مستيقظ	roll	لفة	last	يستمر
soon	قريباً	broken	محطم	mistakes	أخطاء
eventually	أخيراً	hill	تل	repeat	يكرر - يردد
letter	خطاب	politician	سياسي	develop	يُطوّر
in addition	بالإضافة إلى ذلك	herbs	أعشاب	teamwork	عمل جماعي
continue	يستمر	advice	نصيحة	reeds	قصب - خيزران
real life	الحياة الواقعية	Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	conclusion	خاتمة
Pharaoh	فرعون	earthquake	زلزال		
confused	متحير - مرتبك	community	مجتمع		

• Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
come up	came up	come up
take	took	taken
break	broke	broken
bite	bit	bitten
shake	shook	shaken
hurt	hurt	hurt

• **Study these Definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
steep	something which is difficult to climb
journey	the act of traveling from one place to another
repair	when you fix something
collapse	when something falls down suddenly
papyrus	this is a type of paper made from plants called reeds
scribe	this is a person who wrote about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court
court	this is a place where the pharaoh made important decisions
herbs	these are plants that people used in food or medicine
script	this is a piece of paper with information written on it

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

lay awake	يستلقي مستيقظاً	for a while	لفترة / لبعض الوقت
late for	متأخر عن	yours faithfully	تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام
walk up the hill	يصعد التل	first of all	في البداية / أولاً
arrive at	يصل إلى [مكان صغير]	To sum up	وخلاصة القول
give an opinion	يعطي رأياً	pack up	يحزم [امتعة]
give reasons for	يعطي مبررات لـ	make decisions	يتخذ قرارات
give a summary of	يعطي ملخص لـ	grow up	ينضج
pour ... onto	يصب ... على		



Pop Quiz on vocabulary

تدريب تلفازي

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللفوية



► Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- If something, it falls down suddenly.
a. crosses b. collapses c. moves d. builds
- He got sick after the snake bit him.
a. cute b. safe c. poisonous d. small
- The engineers build a to cross the river.
a. tower b. beach c. bridge d. house
- The king and the queen live in a
a. palace b. farm c. wall d. bridge

5. The doctor asked me to the medicine bottle before drinking it.
a. wash b. shake c. throw d. break
6. This mountain is difficult to climb. It's
a. near b. steep c. small d. low
7. To fix a broken toy is to it.
a. repair b. cut c. damage d. destroy
8. A is a person who wrote about daily life in ancient Egypt.
a. doctor b. nurse c. pharaoh d. scribe
9. In ancient Egypt, children wrote on wooden
a. trees b. tablets c. glass d. bowl
10. We can grow to eat or to make into medicine.
a. herbs b. papyrus c. planets d. planes
11. A is a piece of paper with information written on it.
a. herb b. court c. script d. playground
12. are dangerous.
a. Rabbits b. Ducks c. Cats d. Snakes

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Lesson 6

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Are school trips important?	experience	School trips are exciting learning experience.
	project	We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.
	sum up	To sum up, school trips are very important.
	education	School trips are a very important part of our education.
Learning about history	create	Past events have created the present.
	first of all	First of all, we can learn a lot by studying the past.
	society - cultures	History helps us understand our society and other cultures.
	government	History helps us learn about past governments.
	in addition	In addition, we learn how and why life has changed.
	repeat	We don't repeat the same mistakes.

Lesson 7

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Story : The doctor comes to school	palace	I am going to the palace.
	scribe	A scribe spent all day writing.
	tablet	Nebsin was writing on his wooden tablet.
	bit	The snake bit the boy's hand.
	scream	He screamed because of the snake's bite.
	papyrus	Rolls of papyrus were on the desk.
	script	The doctor picked some papyrus scripts.
	poisonous	That snake is not poisonous.
	shook	The doctor put the herbs in a bottle of oil and shook it.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Lesson 5

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

The bridge to school

Lina lay awake, listening to the wind and rain. The storm lasted all night. Then, as the sun came up, she heard a crash. She ran to the window.

"What was that?" asked her sister, Sarah.

Lina looked at the river near their house. "Oh no!" she said. "The bridge has collapsed!"



The bridge after the storm

The village where Lina and Sarah lived was small, and had steep mountains all around it. The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to the town, with the school, stores, doctors, and sports center.

They ran to the kitchen to see their parents.

"I've just listened to the radio," said Mom. "They said that the storm would stop soon. Then we can see what has happened."

Eventually, the rain stopped, and Lina and her family walked to the river. Other people were there too.

Lina's dad pointed to the broken bridge. He said that they couldn't go to town, or the school.

"What are we going to do?" asked Lina.

They had to stay at home that day, and their teacher sent work for them to do online.

The next morning, a school bus drove into the village square.

"Look, Lina," said Sarah. "The bus is here!"

"The bus?" said Lina. "But it's such a long way by road!"

"I know, but it's the only thing we can do," said Sarah, picking up her bag and running to the door.

As Lina got on the bus, she looked at the bridge. Seeing it broken made her sad. Their life would be different until someone repaired it. She enjoyed going across it in the mornings, and walking up the hill on the other side. She was often the first to arrive at school. Now she would be late!

The bus journey took two hours. It was hot, and the traffic moved slowly. Lina was sleepy and sad.

At school, Lina asked to use the computer. She wrote a letter about the storm and the broken bridge. When she got home, she took photos.

Her teacher said that writing a letter for everyone to see was a great idea, because everybody should know about the bridge and try to help. She helped Lina send the letter and photos to newspapers and websites all over the country.

The next day, Lina and her friends took the bus to school. To their surprise, when they came home, they saw engineers and builders at the river. They smiled at the children.

"We heard about your letter!" said a man in a yellow coat. "We're building a new bridge, so you can get to school quickly."

After a week, there was a new metal bridge. "Well done, Lina," said Sarah. "Your letter helped everybody!"

Lesson 6

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Are school trips important? by Nesma, aged 12

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences.

First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.



Schoolchildren at the Egyptian Museum, Cairo

To sum up, school trips are a very important part of our education. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

Is studying the past important ?

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. In my opinion, it is important that we understand how past events have created the present.

First of all, we can learn a lot by studying the past. History helps us understand our society and other cultures because we learn about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. In addition, we learn about how and why life has changed over the years.

Some people say that the present is more interesting than the past, but I don't agree. History is interesting and exciting because it is full of great stories and interesting people. Finally, history helps us learn from past mistakes so that we don't repeat the same mistakes in the future.

In conclusion, I think that studying history is an important part of our education. History helps us learn from the past and it helps us understand why and how things change.



Lesson 7

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

The doctor comes to school

Nebsin didn't want to get up. The sun was bright, but his bed was comfortable.

"Nebsin!" Dad called. "Time for school!"

Nebsin went into the kitchen. His mom was making breakfast, and his brother was playing.

"Why do I have to go to school?" he said.

"Babu plays all day. His life is easy!"

"Babu will start school next year, when he is seven," said his mom.

"I'm going to the palace, Nebsin," said Dad. "Let's walk together."

They left the house. His father was a scribe, who spent all day writing about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court.

"Did you like school, Dad ?" asked Nebsin.

"Of course! I wanted to learn to read and write, like you are doing."



"Why did you want to be a scribe?"

"My father was a scribe, and his father was a scribe. It's an important job. You will know what you want to be one day."

Nebsin was confused. He didn't know yet what job he wanted to do in the future.

Later that morning, Nebsin was sitting on the floor, listening to the teacher and writing on his wooden tablet. Suddenly, a boy jumped up and started shouting. The teacher was shocked.

"Sit down!" he said.

"There's a snake!" somebody shouted. Everyone looked. A small, brown snake was moving across the classroom floor. The boy tried to push the snake away, but it bit his hand and he screamed.

"Quick, Nebsin!" the teacher said. "Get the doctor. She'll know what to do."

Nebsin and another boy ran to the doctor's building. She was sitting at a desk with rolls of papyrus on it. When they ran in, she was reading and writing notes.

"Help, please! A snake bit our friend!" shouted Nebsin.

The doctor picked up her bag and some papyrus scripts. They ran to the school, where the boy was crying. His hand was red and sore.

"Will he be OK, Doctor?" asked the teacher.

"What kind of snake was it?" she asked, studying the boy's hand.

"It was small, and brown, with dark circles," said Nebsin.

The doctor looked at one of her papyrus rolls and said, "Good. That snake isn't poisonous."

She took some herbs out of her bag, put them into a bottle of oil, and shook it. She poured this onto a cloth.

"Keep this on the bite," the doctor said. "It will hurt for a while, but you won't get sick."

Nebsin was amazed. He watched as the doctor packed up her papyrus scripts and her bag.

"Excuse me. How did you learn to be a doctor?" he asked.

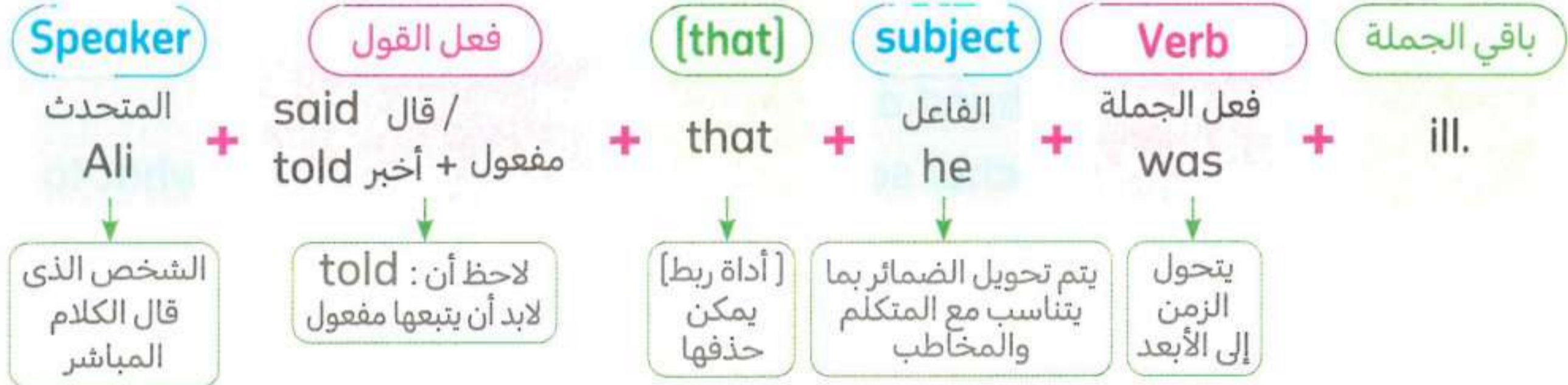
"It takes a long time!" said the doctor. "If you want to be a doctor, you should work hard here at school!"

Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

★ الكلام المباشر "Direct speech" هو الكلام الذي يأتي على لسان شخص ما مباشرة أو نصًا ويكون الكلام موضوعًا بين علامتي تنصيص "...." - "I am ill.", said Ali.

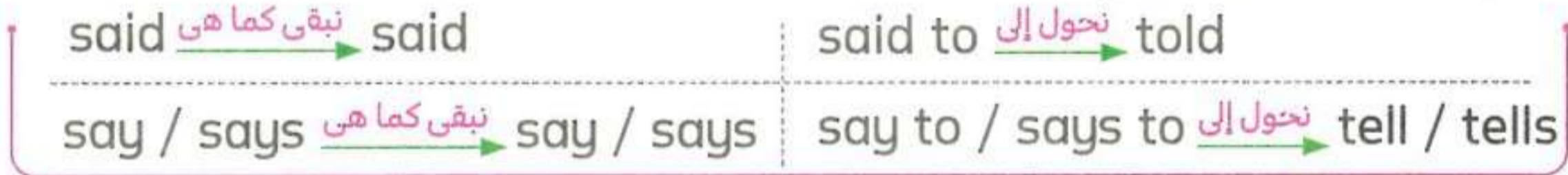
- We use **reported speech** to say what someone said.
يستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر لأخبار بما قاله شخص ما.
- We change the tense from present, or future, to past.
نقوم بتغيير الأزمنة من المضارع أو المستقبل إلى الماضي.

1 Statement : الجملة الخبرية



★ خطوات تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى غير المباشر :

1. تحويل فعل القول كالتالي :



◀ لاحظ الفرق بين **told / said**

said لا يأتي بعدها مفعول

ex. Omar said, "I like chicken." → Omar said [that] he liked chicken.

told لا بد أن يأتي بعدها مفعول

ex. "I like chicken." Omar said to me. → Omar told me [that] he liked chicken.

2. تحذف الأقواس ونربط بكلمة **that** ويمكن حذفها.

3. يتم تحويل الضمائر بما يتوافق مع المتكلم والمخاطب :

ضمائر الفاعل		ضمائر المفعول		صفات الملكية	
Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
I	he / she	me	him / her	my	his / her
you	I / we	you	me / us	your	my / our
we	they	us	them	our	their

"I am going to do **my** homework", said Lara.

Lara said [that] **she** was going to do **her** homework.

٤. يتم تحويل زمن الفعل من المضارع إلى الماضي كالتالي عند التحويل إلى صيغة الكلام غير المباشر :

• Present tense :

Present → Past	
"I like reading", said Fares. "My dad works in Cairo.", said Dalia. "I've found my keys." Marwa said.	- Fares said he liked reading. - Dalia said her dad worked in Cairo. تحول الفعل [works] إلى [worked]. - Marwa said that she had found her keys.
Present [am - is - are] "The train is fast", said Mona. "I'm doing my homework", said Ali.	Past [was - were] - Mona said the train was fast. - Ali said that he was doing his homework.
can + inf. "Salma can play the piano," said Amira.	could + inf. - Amira said Salma could play the piano. تحول الفعل [can] إلى [could].

• Future :

- زمن المستقبل :

will + inf. "I will travel to Alexandria," said Amany.	would + inf. - Amany said she would travel to Alexandria. تحول الفعل [will] إلى [would].
---	--

2 Reported Questions الأسئلة في الكلام غير المباشر



◀ يتم تحويل السؤال في صيغة الكلام المباشر إلى غير مباشر كالتالي :

1. تحول "said / said to" إلى "asked / wondered / wanted to know".
2. تحذف الأقواس ويربط بنفس أداة الاستفهام الموجودة أو نربط بـ [whether / if] إذا كان السؤال بـ "هل".
3. بعد أداة الاستفهام نقوم بترتيب الجملة [الفاعل + الفعل].
4. يتم تغيير الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب.
5. تتغير الأزمنة من المضارع إلى الماضي كما سبق شرحه في الجملة الخبرية.
6. يتم حذف علامة الاستفهام [?] ونضع بدلا منها [.] .

- ex.** - Laila **said** , "Where **is** Ali ?". - Laila **asked** where **Ali was**.
 - Ashraf **said to me** , "When **can we** meet ?"
 - Ashraf **asked me** when **we could** meet.

لاحظ أن :

• حذف الفعل المساعد [do/does] وتحويل الفعل الأساسي إلى الماضي.

- ex.** * Sarah **said to me**, "What **do you want** ?"
 - Sarah **asked** me what I **wanted**.

Yes / No Question

- ex.** * "Have you ever been to Japan, Maha ?", **said** Nora.
 - Nora **asked** Maha **if she had** ever been to Japan.
ex. * "Are you an astronomer عالم فلك ؟" , the student said to the professor.
 - The student **asked** the professor **whether** she / he **was** an astronomer.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- He said he heard the new song.
 a. has b. had c. have d. was
- He that he worked in Alexandria.
 a. says b. say c. said d. saying
- He said that he the full mark.
 a. get b. gets c. got d. getting
- They asked if they use the laptop.
 a. can b. could to c. can't d. could
- He said that he never eaten sushi.
 a. had b. having c. has d. have
- Hadeer asked Mona if bought any oranges.
 a. her b. he c. she d. you
- He told me that he come.
 a. is b. will c. can d. would
- She said that the bus there.
 a. is b. was c. were d. has
- Sarah asked how they get to school.
 a. would b. will c. are d. can
- Basel said that he going to the museum.
 a. was b. is c. will d. has

11. Lina's mom said that it a safe road.
a. can't b. isn't c. won't d. wasn't
12. She asked her where she from .
a. coming b. come c. came d. comes
13. The nurse asked me if I any pain.
a. had b. have c. having d. has
14. She asked me where I
a. am b. were c. is d. was
15. Henry asked me how much the jacket
a. costing b. cost c. to cost d. costs

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.



1. Eyad asked who [get] the prize.
2. Farah asked Nour why she [were] late.
3. He asked me how often I [play] basketball.
4. She asked her if [her] could do everything with the tablet.
5. Laila said her teacher [need] a plan for the summer vacation.
6. He asked how they would [spends] their weekend.
7. She said she [like] ice cream.
8. She said she [be] living in Luxor.
9. Hagar said she [hasn't] seen Mera.
10. They said they [will] come to the party.

IV Writing skill

Writing an opinion

- When you write about your opinion, you need to give reasons for it.
عندما تكتب عن رأيك فانك تحتاج إلى إعطاء مبررات لرأيك.
- In the main ideas paragraphs, give different reasons for your opinion, and use phrases to introduce each new reason.
في الفقرات التي تناقش الأفكار الرئيسية يجب عليك إبداء أسباب مختلفة لرأيك، وكذلك استخدام عبارات لتعبر عن كل سبب جديد.
- We use commas after these adverb phrases.
نستخدم فاصلة سفلية (,) بعد تلك العبارات الظرفية.
 - First of all, we can learn a lot ...
 - In addition, school trips are often more interesting than ...
 - Finally, we can continue learning when ...

Test 14

on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. School trips are exciting for experiences.
a. learning b. farming c. writing d. clothing
2. We can learn a lot by new places.
a. kicking b. building c. visiting d. forgetting
3. School trips are often more than only reading about things in books.
a. frightening b. dangerous c. boring d. interesting
4. We can do a project about what we saw on the
a. way b. trip c. road d. farm

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

poured - hand - snake - bottle - brown

Once in ancient Egypt, there was a snake moving across the classroom floor of one of the schools. It was a small, [1] snake. A boy tried to push the snake away, but it bit his [2], and he screamed. The teacher called a doctor. The doctor said that the snake wasn't poisonous. She took some herbs out of her bag, put them into a [3] of oil, and shook it. She [4] this onto a cloth. She put this on the bite. "It would hurt for a while, but he wouldn't get sick," she said.

(Cairo - downtown 2024)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Nebsin's father was a scribe who worked at the pharaoh's palace. A scribe was someone who wrote about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court. One day, while Nebsin was in class and writing on his tablet, a snake bit a boy's hand. Nebsin quickly ran to the doctor's office. The doctor picked up her bag and some medicine, and they both ran back to the school. The boy was crying.

"What kind of snake was it?" the doctor asked.

"It was small and brown with dark circles," said Nebsin.

"Good," said the doctor. "That snake isn't **dangerous**". The doctor put some herbs into a bottle of oil. She put the liquid onto the snake's bite.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nebsin was writing on his when the snake bit the boy.
a. tablet b. notebook c. computer d. mobile phone

2. The opposite of the underlined word "dangerous" is
 a. unkind b. safe c. quick d. ill
3. The doctor put some into a bottle of oil.
 a. salt b. herbs c. water d. ice

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Where did Nebsin's father work ?

5. Why were scribes important in Ancient Egypt ?

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He said he just arrived home.
 a. has b. had c. having d. to have
2. The coach said that they well.
 a. play b. playing c. plays d. were playing
3. She asked she could come and help us.
 a. or b. if c. but d. and
4. They where he bought his clothes.
 a. asked b. said c. told d. says
5. Mona said that would visit her grandma.
 a. they b. I c. she d. we
6. Sara told Hana they borrow their father's car.
 a. could b. can to c. can d. to can

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. did – bridge – collapse – When – the ?

2. a letter – local – She – to – newspaper – sent – the.

3. trips – learning – are – School – for – important.

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your opinion about school trips"

Guiding elements :

- experience • interesting • learn

.....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Identify the general idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية العامة للنص].



Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer.

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences.

First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

To sum up, school trips are a very important part of our education. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

Or : The main/general idea of the text is about "" .

Or : The text talks about "" .

Or : What's the main idea of the text ? What's the text about ?

Or : What's the best title for this passage ?

Give a suitable title for this passage.

- a. Watching videos
- b. school trips
- c. School subjects
- d. New books

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions.

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. In my opinion, it is important that we understand how past events have created the present.

First of all, we can learn a lot by studying the past.

History helps us understand our society and other cultures because we learn about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. In addition, we learn about how and why life has changed over the years.

• The text is about "" .

Or : The main/general idea of the text is about "" .

Or : The text talks about "" .

Or : What's the main idea of the text ? /

What's the text about ?

Or : What's the best title for this passage ?

Give a suitable title for this passage.

- a. Studying history
- b. The present
- c. The society
- d. Artists

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [المساحات الخضراء على الأسقف] و [النوادي المدرسية] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها في تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

Write the meaning :

..... سقف المبنى
 الطبيعة
 مساحات خضراء
 ينظف
 صرن
 الظل

Green roofs

..... نادى التصوير
 عقل
 نادى الرياضة
 وجبات
 آلات موسيقية
 يمثل

School clubs

Step 2 Sentences

Complete the sentences :

1. Some students have their lessons in a garden on the of the school.
2. They design for schools on the top of building.
3. Green roofs bring into the city.
4. They and cool the air.
5. Desks are in the but there are no walls.

1. We run and climb a rope in club.
2. We learn to take beautiful photos in the club.
3. Art is good for your
4. We sing songs and play in music club.
5. We make from different countries in the cooking club.

Step 3 Topics

Write a paragraph using the sentences :

"Green roofs"

.....

Write an email using the sentences :

"School clubs"

.....

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٩ جملة].

1 Classrooms on the roof!

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school^[1]! The Shagara at school project designs gardens and green roofs for the school in Egypt^[2]. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building^[3]. They bring nature into the city^[4]. They also clean and cool the air^[5]. They are great for the environment^[6]. This project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden^[7].

2 Your school week

We go to school from Sunday to Friday^[8]. I have to wear a school uniform^[9]. My school uniform and shoes have to be neat^[10]. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny^[11]. I sometimes get the bus with my friends^[12]. We do more interesting subjects, like ICT^[13]. I like using computers! School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm^[14]. We have an hour for lunch^[15]. I usually bring lunch from home^[16].

3 School trips

I think school trips are exciting learning experiences^[17]. We can learn a lot by visiting new places^[18]. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better^[19].

In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos^[20]. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip^[21]. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip^[22].

4 Green City School

At Green City School, they want to help the environment^[23]. They use solar panels to make electricity^[24]. They recycle a lot of paper^[25]. They have a school garden to grow plants, vegetables, and fruit^[26]. It is a great place to learn about nature^[27]. The climbing frame in the Eco-playground is made of recycled materials^[28]. In the garden we grow our own flowers, fruit and vegetables^[29].

Review on Unit 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثالثة في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

green roofs	اسقف خضراء	solar panels	الواح الطاقة الشمسية	collapse	ينهار
sleds	زلجات	papyrus	ورق البردي	repair	يصلح
timetable	جدول مواعيد	principal	مستول - مدير المدرسة	steep	شديد الانحدار
flexible	مرن	demonstration	إيضاح - عرض	experiences	خبرات
tent	خيمة			learning	التعلم
cycle	يركب دراجة			court	محكمة / فناء
uniform	زي موحد			poisonous	سام

Language

1 Adverbs of frequency : ظروف التكرار :

●●●●●	●●●○	●●○○	●○○○	○○○○○
always	usually	often	sometimes	never

► Usage : الاستخدام

- We can use **adverbs of frequency** with the present simple to say **how often** something happens.

يمكننا أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط لتحديد عدد مرات تكرار حدوث شيء ما.

ex. - I am never late for school. - She often walks to school.

2 Using **make me + adj.** صفة

► Formation : التكوين

Subject + make(s) object + adjective صفة

ex. - I have some friends. → - I'm happy.

= My friends **make me** happy.

3 Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

يستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر لأخبار بما قاله شخص ما.

- We change the tense from present, or future, to past.

نقوم بتغيير الأزمنة من المضارع أو المستقبل إلى الماضي.

► Statement : الجملة الخبرية

Speaker	فعل القول	[that]	subject	Verb	باقي الجملة
المتحدث Ali	said قال / told أخبر + مفعول	that	الفاعل he	فعل الجملة was	ill.

Test 15 on Unit 3

• نصوص الاستماع
• فى نهاية الكتاب.
• التقييمات الشهرية
• فى نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

• **1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.**

1. Lilly goes to middle school in San Francisco,
a. France b. USA c. Egypt d. Germany
2. She started school when she was
a. five b. six c. seven d. eight
3. In Kindergarten, there were a lot of
a. books b. toys c. computers d. tablets
4. She likes using
a. cameras b. mobiles c. computers d. tablets

• **2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

part – learn - events – subjects – society

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. It is important to understand how past [1] have created the present. History helps us understand our [2] and other cultures. In addition, we [3] about how life has changed over the years. I think that studying history is an important [4] of our education.

• **3 Read the following text and answer the questions.**

Lina lay awake, listening to the wind and rain. The storm lasted all night. Then, as the sun came up, she heard a crash. She ran to the window. "What was that?" asked her sister, Sarah. Lina looked at the river near their house. "Oh no!" she said. "The bridge has collapsed!"

The village where Lina and Sarah lived was small, and had steep mountains all around it. The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to the town, with the school, stores, doctors, and sports center.

They ran to the kitchen to see their parents. "I've just listened to the radio," said Mom. "They said that the storm would stop soon. Then we can see what has happened."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "A".
a. river b. bridge c. boat d. school
2. The underlined word "collapsed" means
a. found out b. brought up c. fell down d. got up
3. Who was listening to the radio ?
a. Dad b. Sarah c. Lina d. Mom

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Describe the village where they lived.
.....
5. Why was the bridge very important ?
.....

• **4 The Reader**

A. Read and write Yes or No.

- 1. Asser was worried about the concert. [.....]
- 2. Mayar and mom had fun in the park. [.....]
- 3. Asser went to the garage to get his guitar. [.....]
- 4. The shovel was covered in ice. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

- 1. Who did Asser go to the park with ?
.....
- 2. What did Asser take when he went to the park ?
.....

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.**

- 1. Traveling on trains her tired.
a. making b. make c. makes d. to make
- 2. They said they going to Alexandria.
a. have b. were c. will d. are
- 3. He his homework in the evening.
a. does always b. always does c. often do d. usually doing
- 4. Reading makes children excited.
a. to feel b. feels c. feel d. feeling
- 5. Watching football matches him nervous.
a. makes b. make c. to make d. making
- 6. Sara asked how they get to school.
a. will b. can c. have d. would

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- 1. feel - you - How - sport - does - make ?
.....
- 2. Sunday - I - every - music - have - class - a.
.....
- 3. solar - renewable - We - energy - panels - use - for.
.....

• **7 Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words about school clubs to your friend Saleem. Your friend's email address is saleem11@yahoo.com. Your name is Hatem and your email address is hatem90@yahoo.com.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

- What clubs are in your school ?
- Which club would you like to go to ?
- Why do you like it ?
- How does it make you feel ?

From

To

Subject

.....
.....
.....
.....

Test 16 on Unit 3

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nebsin didn't want to His bed was comfortable.
a. play b. run c. get up d. watch TV
2. When he went into the kitchen, his mom was making
a. breakfast b. a cake c. juice d. dinner
3. Nebsin's father was a
a. doctor b. vet c. farmer d. scribe
4. Nebsin didn't know what he wanted to do in the future.
a. job b. test c. game d. homework

(Sharkiya - Tenth of Ramadan 2024)

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

trips – child – visiting – videos – better

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences. First of all, we can learn a lot by [1] new places. When we learn something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it [2] In addition, school [3] are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching [4]

(Beni Suef - Nasser 2024)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

(Luxor 2024)

Hi, my name is Hany, and I go to El Salam School in Luxor. I always go to school with my sister Hana. She is in primary two. We go by bus. School starts at 8 a.m and finishes at 2 p.m. I'm in grade six.

We do more writing and we do more interesting subjects, like ICT. We all like using computers. My favourite subject is science. We have science classes on Saturday and Monday. We go to the laboratory for science lessons. At the break, we play in the playground and have breakfast in the cafeteria. After the break, we have four lessons before we go home.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "interesting" is
a. exciting b. boring c. wonderful d. busy
2. They have breakfast in the
a. classroom b. laboratory c. house d. cafeteria
3. Hana and Hany go to school
a. by car b. by bus c. on foot d. by taxi

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Where do they go for science lessons ?

.....

5. How many lessons do they have after the break ?

.....

• **4 The Reader**

A. Read and write Yes or No.

1. Shady and his dad invited Asser to the park. (Cairo - Nasr City 2024) [.....]
2. Asser found Mom and Dad's boots were clean in the trunk. (Cairo - Mostaqbal 2024) [.....]
3. Asser and Shady sat down by some tall trees in the park. (Assiut - Educational supervision 2024) [.....]
4. Asser liked to play the guitar. (Menoufia - Ashmoun 2024) [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions :

1. Where did Asser go to get the football ?
.....
2. Why did Asser practice his song a lot ?
.....
(Giza - October 2024)

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Lina said that the bridge collapsed. (Assiut - Educational supervision 2024)
a. have b. has c. had d. having
2. Dad asked me Spanish. (Minya - Mallawi 2024)
a. do you speak b. did I speak c. if I spoke d. I spoke
3. Cooking club usually makes hungry. (Ismailia - Educational supervision 2024)
a. me b. I c. his d. they
4. I wear my school uniform. It's a school rule. (Luxor 2024)
a. never b. always c. sometimes d. often
5. Playing music for my parents me proud. (Beni Suef - Nasser 2024)
a. makes b. make c. making d. to make
6. He goes to school on foot. He goes by bus every day. (Cairo - Nasr City 2024)
a. often b. never c. always d. sometimes

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. does - the doctor - on - What - the bite - put ? (Qalyubia 2024)
.....
2. roofs - Green - great - are - the environment - for. (Alexandria - Al-Gomrok 2024)
.....
3. encourage - We - to walk - you - cycle - or. (Port Said - East port Said 2024)
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your school"

Guiding elements:

- How do you go to school ?
- When does your school start ?
- Where do you study science ?
- How is your playground like ?

(Port Said - Educational supervision 2024)

We can make a difference!

يمكننا إحداث فرق!

Aims of Unit Four : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الرابعة :

In this unit I will ...

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- describe myself and my friends. - اصف نفسي واصدقائي.
- understand and use reported questions. - افهم واستخدم الأسئلة في الكلام الغير مباشر.
- listen to and give opinions. - استمع واعطى اراء.
- understand and use noun suffixes - افهم واستخدم المقاطع المضافة لنهاية الأسماء.
- understand and use the superlative form of adjectives. - افهم واستخدم صيغة التفضيل من الصفات.
- read and understand a play. - اقرأ وافهم مسرحية.
- take part in a play. - اشترك في مسرحية.
- write a detailed personal profile. - اكتب ملف شخصي مفصل.
- read and understand a story. - اقرأ وافهم قصة.





I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

glasses	نظارة	expressions	تعبيرات
braces	تقويم الأسنان [دعامات للأسنان]	curly hair	شعر مجعد
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	straight hair	شعر مستقيم
hearing aid	سماعة الأذن	mean = unkind	بخيل / قاس
disability	عجز - إعاقة	dark hair	شعر داكن اللون
sounds	أصوات	finger spelling	لغة الأصابع
sign language	لغة الإشارة	communicating	التواصل
lip-reading	قراءة الشفاه	text messages	رسائل نصية

• Extra vocabulary

hearing difficulties	صعوبات السمع	equally	على حد سواء
laugh	يضحك	creative	مبدع
imagine	يتخيل	language classes	فصول تعليم اللغة
guess	يخمن	geography	مادة الجغرافيا
meow	مواء [صوت القطة]	invite	يُدعو
quiet noises	أصوات هادئة	forehead	الجبهة [مقدمة الرأس]
loud noises	أصوات صاخبة	press	يضغط

• Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
tell يخبر	told	told
say يقول	said	said
teach يُدرس	taught	taught

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feel a bit sad	يشعر ببعض الحزن	communicate with	يتواصل مع
look the same	يبدو متشابهين	do American sign language	يقوم بأداء لغة الإشارة الأمريكية
different to	مختلف عن	[be] able to + inf.	قادر على
wear braces	يضع تقويم الأسنان	make a difference	يحدث فرق
get straight	يستقيم		

• Did you know ?

- Some people can read with their fingers! Louis Braille invented the Braille writing system when he was only fifteen !

• بعض الأشخاص يستطيعون القراءة باستخدام اصابعهم. قام لويس برايل باختراع طريقة برايل للكتابة عندما كان يبلغ من العمر الخامسة عشر فقط !



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



► Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- The world would be if we were all the same. I don't like the idea.
a. amazing b. boring c. fun d. exciting
- I couldn't see well yesterday because I forgot my
a. lunchbox b. eraser c. glasses d. braces
- My sister wears to get her teeth straight.
a. glasses b. braces c. necklaces d. earrings
- Omar uses a/an because he can't walk well.
a. pencil case b. wheelchair c. knife d. armchair
- The old man has problems hearing, so he has a/an
a. wheelchair b. brace c. hearing aid d. armchair
- If someone is, the students should ask their teachers for help.
a. kind b. mean c. clever d. smart
- Her hair isn't, it's straight.
a. brown b. curly c. black d. dark
- We are not the same, we are
a. difficult b. boring c. different d. lazy
- Ali is, he always makes fun of his classmates.
a. kind b. unkind c. clever d. creative
- Every day, I hear my cat in the morning.
a. talking b. meowing c. singing d. reading
- There are many ways to communicate with people who have hearing
a. classes b. differences c. abilities d. difficulties
- Listening to music makes me relax before sleeping.
a. boring b. quiet c. noisy d. high
- reading is a good way to communicate with people who have hearing difficulties.
a. Tooth b. Lip c. Eye d. Ear
- Mark his friends to come to his birthday party.
a. imagined b. laughed c. invited d. guessed
- Using the phones helps many people with each other.
a. kill b. visit c. communicate d. spell

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Lesson 1

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Why we are all special	different to	We are different to each other.
	curly - straight	My hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is straight.
	glasses	He wears glasses.
	braces	Injy wears braces to help her teeth get straight.
	wheelchair	Amal uses a wheelchair because she can't walk well.
	hearing aid	Amina has a hearing aid because she has problems hearing.
	look after	We look after each other in our classroom.
	equally	We are all equally important.

Lesson 2

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Ways to communicate	communicate	We can use many ways to communicate with each other.
	difficulty	We should help people with hearing difficulties.
	meow	I heard our cat meowing.
	lip - reading - sign language	Lip-reading and sign language are useful ways to communicate.
	finger spelling	There is a way of communicating called finger spelling.
	text messages	I send text messages to my friends.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Lesson 1

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Why we're all special by Reem

Today, our teacher, Mrs Mona, asked us, "How are we different to each other?"

That's an easy question to answer! Asser is very tall. He's taller than everyone else in the class. I'm very short. I have green eyes and Asser has brown eyes. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is very straight, and he wears glasses. Injy wears braces to help her teeth get straight. Amal uses a wheelchair because she cannot walk well. Amina has a hearing aid because she has problems hearing.



Mrs Mona teaching our class

We have different families, too - I have three sisters, but my best friend Amal has two brothers ! My friend Dalia loves sports, but I prefer language classes.

Then, Mrs Mona asked us to tell our friend about something that makes them special. I told Amal I love her curly hair and the way she helps me with math - she's the best at math in the class ! And Amal told me she loves the way I make her laugh when she's feeling a bit sad.

Mrs Mona said, "Imagine a world where we're all the same. What would it be like ?"

"Actually," said Sherif, "I think it would be a bit boring."

"Yes," said Sally, "it would be really boring."

"And imagine if everyone was good at the same things ?" said Mrs Mona.

"Well, then it wouldn't be very exciting," I said.

"It's good that everyone is different," said Mrs Mona. "We don't look the same because our families are different. Some of us are tall, some short, some have curly hair, and some have straight hair. Some of us have two brothers and sisters, and others have three. Some of us are good at music, and others are good at sports." Everyone agreed.

"The important thing is that we look after each other in our classroom. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. Our school is for everyone - we are all equally important," said Mrs Mona.

"But what should we do if we see someone being mean at school ?" asked Injy. "I saw someone being unkind to Tarek the other day because he forgot his glasses, and so he couldn't see well."

"You should always come and see me, or another teacher," said Mrs Mona.

"Here at school we should all help each other."

Lesson 2

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Today, our teacher invited an interesting person called Mr Kamal to come and talk to us in class. Mr Kamal told us about the best ways to communicate with people who have hearing difficulties.

First, he asked us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he heard other people talking, and I said I heard our cat meowing in the morning !

Then, Mr Kamal asked what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well. It really made us think ! Adam asked if we would only be able to hear loud noises. Mr Kamal said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises.

Next, Mr Kamal asked us what ways we communicate with each other. We thought there were lots of ways. I said that talking was a way of communicating. Adam said that using expressions, like smiling, was another. Younis said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate.

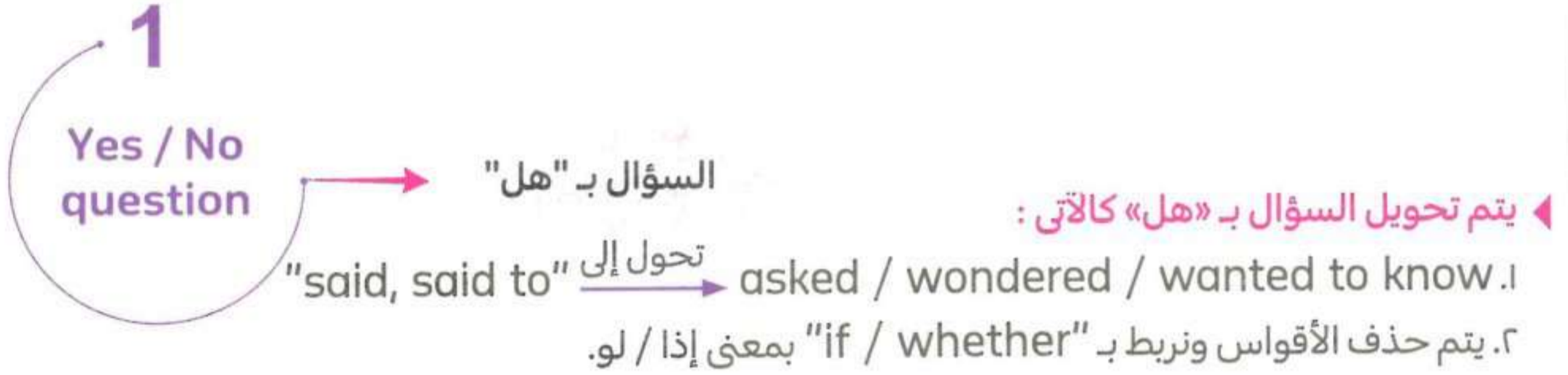
Then, Mr Kamal told us about a really clever way to communicate! Can you guess what it is ?

III Language

Reported questions الأسئلة في الكلام غير المباشر

Remember

When we report questions, we change the tense and word order, and remove the word do. When it is a Yes/No question, we use if :



- ex. 1. "Have you ever been to Japan, Maha ?", said Nora.
- Nora asked Maha if she had ever been to Japan.
2. "Do you hear lots of sounds outside ?"
- He asked us if we heard lots of sounds outside.



- ex. 1. - Laila said , "Where is Ali ?".
- Laila asked where Ali was.
2. - Ashraf said to me , "When can we meet ?"
- Ashraf asked me [wanted to know] when we could meet.

لاحظ أن :

حذف الفعل المساعد [do/does] وتحويل الفعل الأساسي إلى الماضي.

- ex. * Sarah said to me, "What do you want ?".
- Sarah asked me what I wanted.

راجع جدول تحويلات الضمائر في الوحدة السابقة



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- He asked if we the results of the exam.
a. knew b. know c. knows d. known
- She asked me if I some cookies.
a. want b. wanted c. wants d. to want
- The doctor asked me if I see all the shapes.
a. can b. could c. have d. do
- Dina asked me I had a mobile phone.
a. what b. but c. if d. so
- Ahmed me where the book was.
a. ask b. asked c. asking d. asks
- Mona asked Hala how she at work.
a. communicating b. communicate
c. communicates d. communicated
- Talia asked her sister what she doing.
a. will b. is c. was d. have
- "Where you live ?" ,Noha asked Salma.
a. does b. do c. have d. had
- They asked him what he eaten.
a. had b. have c. has d. having
- He asked if I how to use sign language.
a. knows b. know c. knew d. known
- Tarek asked if Hend sending text messages.
a. like b. likes c. liked d. like to
- Wael Yara if she could hear the bird.
a. asks b. asked c. asking d. ask
- She asked me if worked from home.
a. we b. her c. I d. his
- The officer asked me who the bag.
a. finding b. finds c. found d. find
- Mrs Elham asked me if I to the library.
a. was going b. am going c. will go d. go

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



- He asked our teacher if she [like] her job.
- She asked her mother if she [is] going to the market.
- The old man asked [I] what time the train left.
- His father asked him where he [go] after school.
- They asked him when he [can] finish his project.

Test 17

on Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل (تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Hani is years old.
a. eleven b. ten c. twelve d. fourteen
- Hani has hair.
a. dark b. curly c. short d. gray
- Hani uses a because he can't walk well.
a. hearing aid b. braces c. walker d. wheelchair
- Hani is good at
a. English b. math c. science d. art

(Behira - Rosseta 2024)

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

Why - special - When - has - families

Reem : Do you think we are all different ?

Yara : Yes. Everyone [1] different things.

Reem : [2] are we all different ?

Yara : Because we are from different [3]

Reem : Do you think being different is a good thing ?

Yara : Yes. In my opinion, that makes us [4]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Our teacher invited an interesting person to talk to us today. His name was Mr Kamal and he told us about the best ways to communicate with people with hearing difficulties.

First, he asked us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he heard other people talking and I said I heard our cat meowing in the morning !

Then Mr Kamal asked us if we heard lots of sounds outside. Younis said we did.

Next, Mr Kamal asked what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well. It really made us think ! Adam asked if we would only be able to hear **loud** noises.

Mr Kamal said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises. He asked us what ways we communicate with each other. We thought there were lots of ways. I said that talking was a way of communication. Adam said that using expressions, like smiling, was another. Younis said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**loud**" is the opposite of ".....".

- a. fast b. quiet c. high d. modern

2. The text aims to help us with people with hearing difficulties.
a. ask b. help c. communicate d. write
3. Younis' favorite way to communicate is
a. text messages b. phone calls c. sign language d. finger spelling

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Who invited Mr Kamal ?
.....
5. What are the ways we use to communicate ?
.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The students where people learned sign language.
a. told b. asked c. said d. say
2. He asked what if you got up early.
a. happen b. happens c. happened d. happening
3. Dina asked if she join the music team.
a. can b. could c. can to d. can't
4. Mom asked me how the exam
a. will b. is c. does d. was
5. Ali asked Hana she liked his new glasses.
a. if b. what c. and d. but
6. Mr Kamal asked what we would happen if we couldn't hear well.
a. thinking b. think c. thinks d. thought

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. uses – because – He – can't – walk – a wheelchair – he.
.....
2. to – we – How – different – are – each other ?
.....
3. use – language – communicate – sign – to – They.
.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"We're all different"

Guiding elements:

- same • straight • look after • important

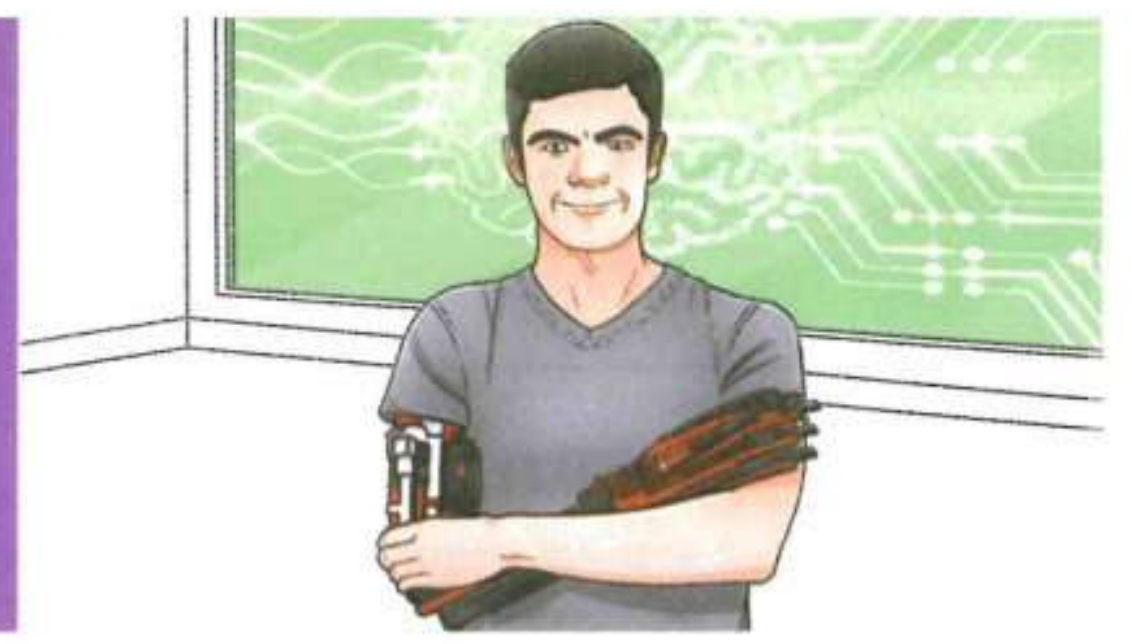
.....

.....

.....

.....

(Fayoum - Etsa 2024)



• Key vocabulary

prosthetic arm	ذراع اصطناعية	poster	ملصق - إعلان
comic books	قصص مضحكة	movable elbow	كوع متحرك
advertisement	إعلان	bricks	مكعبات - قوالب
kindness	عطف	group	مجموعة

• Extra vocabulary

drawing	الرسم	prices	الأسعار
Spain	أسبانيا	bus ride	رحلة بالحافلة
cheaply	بسعر رخيص	TV channel	قناة تلفزيونية
university	جامعة	confident	واثق
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	amazing	مدهش - مذهل
tropical	استوائي	website	موقع إلكتروني
fantastic	رائع	lovely	جميل
excellent	ممتاز	important	هام
characters	شخصيات	bakery	مخبز
emotions	مشاعر	feelings	مشاعر

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make animations	يصنع رسوم متحركة	act it out	يمثل
do taekwondo	يمارس رياضة التايكوندو	researching information	البحث عن معلومات
get into / in	يدخل في	of course	بالطبع
work with	يعمل مع	look proud	يبدو فخورًا
good at + [n. /inf. + ing]	جيد في	find out	يكتشف
a little later	بعد قليل		

Noun Suffixes

Sometimes nouns have a different ending called a suffix.

أحيانًا تنتهي الأسماء بنهايات مختلفة تسمى لاحقة.

▶ The suffix : اللاحقة

The suffix : is a letter or group of letters added at the end of a word to make a new word :

اللاحقة : هي إضافة حرف أو مجموعة من الأحرف في نهاية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

► Examples :

base	اصـل الـكـلمـة	suffix	الـلاحـقـة	[noun]
advertise	يعلن	-ment		إعلان
agree	يوافق	-ment		اتفاق
entertain	يسلى	-ment		تسلية
ill	مريض	-ness		المرض
kind	طيب - عطوف	-ness		لطف - عرض
happy	سعيد	-ness		السعادة
inform	يخبر - يعلم	-tion		معلومات
relax	يسترخى	-tion		استرخاء
transform	يحول	-tion		تحويل
create	يبدع - يخلق	-ion		خلق - إبداع
transport	ينقل	-tion		وسائل النقل
sad	حزين	-ness		حزن
improve	يحسن	-ment		تحسين - تنمية



Pop Quiz

on Vocabulary

تدرب تلقائى

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



► Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- I like reading because they are funny.
a. video games b. robots c. comic books d. cartoons
- Having a arm helps him with his disability.
a. weak b. prosthetic c. unhealthy d. bad
- She more about her disability after reading a book about hearing problems.
a. plans b. draws c. lives d. understands
- Be and stop worrying about everything around you.
a. nervous b. confident c. weak d. mean
- These prosthetic arms aren't expensive because they are made of bricks.
a. silver b. plastic c. gold d. water
- My brother is good at animations, he is creative.
a. reading b. joining c. painting d. making
- After the accident, she has prosthetic arm with a movable ".....".
a. ear b. elbow c. eye d. mouth
- We get the noun from the verb "advertise" by adding the suffix ".....".
a. -ly b. -ment c. -ness d. -ion
- The girl showed her when she helped the old woman.
a. kind b. kindly c. kindness d. unkind

10. To get the noun from the verb "create" ; we use the suffix "".
 a. -ness b. -ly c. -ion d. -ed
11. Kindness and are very important in our life.
 a. happy b. happily c. happiness d. unhappy
12. His parents were of him when he got the gold medal.
 a. lazy b. proud c. boring d. sad
13. I always buy fresh bread and cakes from this
 a. bakery b. garage c. office d. apartment
14. The words "inform" and "relax" are
 a. nouns b. adjectives c. adverbs d. verbs
15. Entertainment and agreement are
 a. verbs b. adverbs c. nouns d. adjectives

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Lesson 3

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Amazing David	prosthetic arm	David built a prosthetic arm with plastic bricks.
	movable elbow	He designed it with a movable elbow.
	comic book	David's dad wrote a comic book about David.
	disabilities	It helps people understand more about disabilities.
	plastic bricks	David made his arm with plastic bricks.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Lesson 3

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

David Aguilar Amphoux is from Spain. When he was 18, he built a prosthetic arm with plastic bricks because he only had one arm. He designed it with a movable elbow and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a comic book about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people understand more about disabilities. Prosthetic arms and legs can be difficult to make, but David made his cheaply with plastic bricks. After university, he wants to create cheap prosthetic arms and legs for people.

Lesson 4

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Mrs Randa : OK, everyone, I want you to get into groups to make posters about animals that live in tropical rainforests. It should be an advertisement for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting information. You can get in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget – kindness is important.



Fares : Tamer, Gameela, Wael, can I work with you ?

Tamer : Oh no, sorry. We're already working with Magdy. Magdy, come here!

Magdy : I'm coming !

Fares : Sherif and Lamar, can I work with you ?

Sherif : Er no, we're working with Fareeda.

Fares starts to feel a bit sad and goes to talk to Mrs Randa.

Fares : I can't find a group to work with, Mrs Randa. Everyone has their group.

Mrs Randa : Oh dear! Of course we can find you someone. Let's go and talk to Amira. Amira, who are you working with in your group ?

Amira : I'm working with Samer and Mariam, but we need someone else.

Mrs Randa: Excellent! Here's Fares !

Amira : Hi, Fares! What would you like to do for the poster ?

Fares : I'd love to draw the pictures !

Amira : That's fantastic! I'm good at writing, Samer is good at design, and Mariam is great at researching information and finding photos. If you can draw pictures, then we will make a very good team !

A little later.....

Mrs Randa: These posters are beautiful. Who did these lovely pictures ?

Samer : That was Fares, Mrs Randa – he really worked hard to make our poster.

Fares smiles and looks very proud.

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Reem : Would you both like to come shopping with me? I want to buy a present for my mom.

Mazen: Oh, that's nice, Reem. Is it her birthday ?

Reem : No, it isn't. I just want to buy her a present for being the best mom. I'm going to use my birthday money from last month.

Talia : That's a great idea. My mom always says, "kindness is important", and that's a kind thing to do. Your mom will love a present. What do you want to buy her ?

Reem : I was thinking of buying her some special cookies, or cakes. I saw an advertisement for the new bakery in town. They make really special cakes and cookies. They put them in a white box with some pretty paper.

Mazen: That would be a great present, Reem. Where's the bakery ? Let's go there now.

Reem : Hmm ... I'm not sure. It's called Cake Creations. They probably have a website.

Talia : OK. If we look at their website, we could get their address and some more information - like what kind of cakes they make and the prices.

Mazen: Great. I'll look at my phone and find the website.

Reem : Thanks Mazen.

Speaking

Asking for opinion

السؤال عن الرأي

What do you think about ... ?

ما رأيك في ... ?

What about + [noun/inf. + ing] ?

ماذا عن ... ?

What do you think ?

ماذا تعتقد ... ?

Giving opinions

إبداء الرأي

In my opinion,

في رأبي ...

To me,

بالنسبة لي ...

I think that

اعتقد أن ...



What do you think about reading comic books ?

ما رأيك في قراءة القصص المضحكة ؟



In my opinion, it is interesting.

اعتقد انها شئ شيق.

Test 18

on Lessons 3 & 4

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل (تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Noha is years old.
a. eight b. nine c. ten d. eleven
2. She lives in with her parents.
a. London b. New York c. Canada d. Paris
3. Noha's favorite hobby is playing
a. football b. volleyball c. tennis d. basketball
4. She writes me a letter every
a. year b. month c. day d. week

(Alexandria - Al-Gomrok 2024)

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

understand - arm - book - movable - foot

David is from Spain. When he was 18, he built a prosthetic [1] with plastic bricks because he only had one arm. He designed it with a [2] elbow and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a comic [3] about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people [4] more about disabilities. Prosthetic arms and legs can be difficult to make, but David made his cheaply with plastic bricks.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A doctor was called to treat a rich man's son. He was skillful enough to save the boy. The rich man was very grateful to the doctor. To show his thanks to the doctor, he offered him a small but beautiful bag. When the doctor saw the bag, he became very angry as he had expected a large sum of money. He said angrily, "A bag is a suitable present for a friend, but I'm a doctor and I need money to get my needs."

The father quietly asked the doctor to tell him about the money he wanted. The doctor replied, "fifty pounds". The rich man opened the bag to take out a hundred pounds which he had placed inside. He handed fifty pounds to the doctor, took the bag and placed the rest of the money in his pocket.

You may imagine the doctor's sorrow when the boy's father kept the rest of the money for himself.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The doctor was angry because he believed the bag
a. wasn't worth much
b. was small
c. with the money in it wasn't enough
d. was full of money
2. The doctor was sorry because he lost
a. one hundred pounds
b. fifty pounds
c. fifty pounds and a bag
d. nothing
3. The meaning of the underlined word "grateful" is
a. thankful b. impolite c. helpful d. unkind

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Why was the rich man grateful to the doctor ?

.....

5. How much money did the doctor want ?

.....

(Minya - Minya 2024)

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. built - plastic - He - with - arm - a prosthetic - bricks.

.....

2. David - very - In my - clever - opinion, - is .

.....

3. at - is - researching - She - information - great.

.....

5 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Working together on a poster"

Guiding elements:

• animals

• kindness

• information

.....

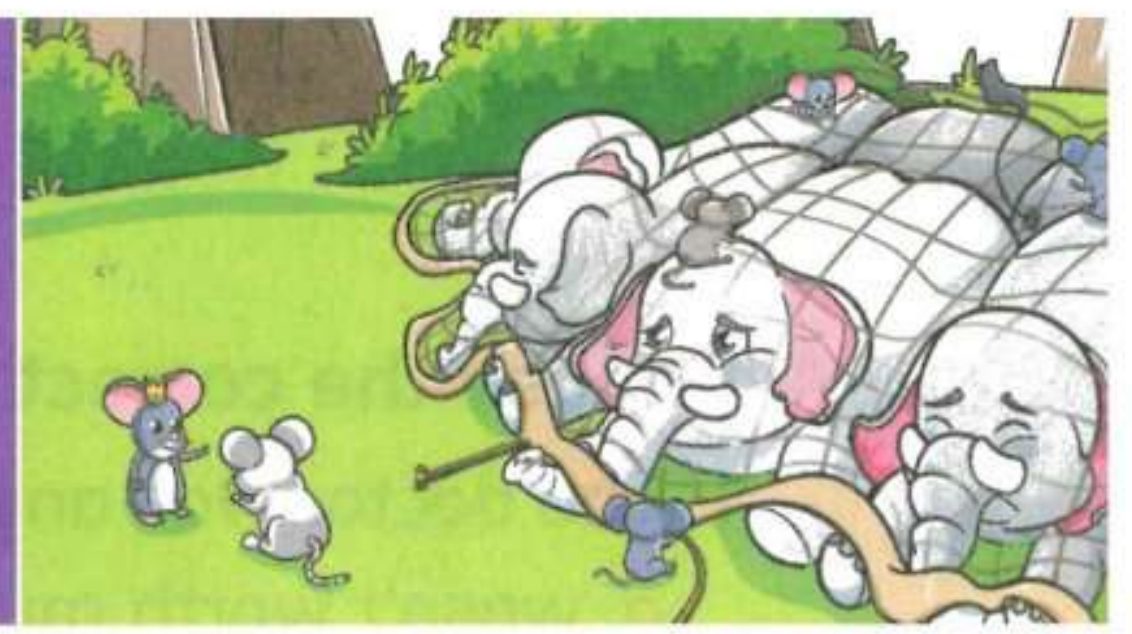
.....

.....

.....

.....

- ▶ Language
- ▶ Writing a personal profile
- ▶ Story : Hana saves the day



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

herd	قطيع	powerful	قوى / ذو نفوذ	respect	يحترم
mice	فئران	leader	قائد	personal	شخصي
hunter	صياد	route	طريق	hobbies	هوايات
profile	ملف تعريفى	entrance	مدخل	walker	مشاية
comment	تعليق	roar	زئير [يصدر صوتًا عاليًا]	relieved	مرتاح البال
cerebral palsy	الشلل الدماغي	physiotherapist	أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي	snack bar	مطعم الوجبات الخفيفة
crawl	يزحف - يخبو				

• Extra vocabulary

path	طريق	net	شبكة	follow	يتبع
shocked	مصدوم	change	يغير	the countryside	الريف
needs	احتياجات	chart	جدول	score	يحرز أهداف
local	محلى	brain	مخ	receive	يستلم - يتلقى
mall	مركز تجارى	scared	خائف - مرعوب	snack	وجبة خفيفة
admire	يعجب	call	ينادى - يتصل	thankful	ممتن - شاكر
stickers	ملصقات	walking frame	إطار المشى [ممشى]	helpful	متعاون
notice	يلاحظ	captain	قائد	serious	جاد / خطير
injuries	إصابات	nod	يوميء / يهز برأسه	ending	نهاية
school blog	مدونة مدرسية	member	عضو		
situation	موقف				

• Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
hurt يؤذى	hurt	hurt
feel يشعر	felt	felt
lose يفقد	lost	lost
catch يمسك - يصاد	caught	caught
throw يلقي	threw	thrown

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
leader	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> the most powerful person or animal in a group, for example, a king or queen the most important person or animal in a group, who controls the others
herd	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a group of elephants A group of animals that live together, such as horses, cows, deer, or elephants
hunter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals A person that kills animals for food or sport
roar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to make a very loud noise A loud sound made by lions and other large animals
route	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a path or a way to go somewhere A way that you follow to get from one place to another
decorate	to add something to an object or place to make it look better
walker	something that people use to help them walk
crawl	to move along the ground using both arms and legs
physiotherapist	a person who helps people with injuries or disabilities

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

during the day	أثناء النهار	score baskets	يسجل نقاط في كرة السلة
get caught	يتم اصطياده	[be] into sports	مهتم بالرياضة
walk along	يمشي بمحاذاة - بامتداد	arrange meeting up	يرتب مقابلة - لقاء
get out	يخرج	come over	يزور
have a meeting	يعقد اجتماع	pull himself up on	يسحب نفسه إلى أعلى مستندًا إلى
keen on	حريص على	in danger	في خطر
as well as	بالإضافة إلى		
report a problem	يبلغ عن مشكلة		



Pop Quiz

on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



► **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

- We should the different needs of people.

a. damage	b. respect	c. store	d. break
-----------	------------	----------	----------
- The fishermen use their to catch a lot of fish.

a. nails	b. axes	c. nets	d. shoes
----------	---------	---------	----------
- All members of our community can a difference.

a. walk	b. make	c. break	d. lose
---------	---------	----------	---------

4. The is a person who tries to catch wild animals.
a. leader b. plumber c. farmer d. hunter
5. The leader should be
a. lazy b. ugly c. powerful d. weak
6. A loud sound made by lions and other large animals is
a. roaring b. meowing c. singing d. crying
7. A is a group of animals that live together such as horses.
a. festival b. competition c. race d. herd
8. The mice the nets with their teeth.
a. left b. bit c. laughed d. broke
9. If you have a toothache, you should go to the
a. vet b. dentist c. builder d. engineer
10. He is very good at playing basketball, he always a lot of points.
a. kicks b. scores c. waves d. hits

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Lesson 6

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My hobbies	keen on	I am keen on walking across the village.
	photography	I am into photography.
	as well as	As well as this, I am really into sports.
	mall	I love going to the mall.
	dentist	I'd like to be a dentist.
	profile	Your personal profile is interesting.

Lesson 7

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Hana saves the day	walker	My new walker arrived.
	decorate	We decorate the new walker.
	physiotherapist	Hana's physiotherapist is called Donia.
	cerebral palsy	The name for what I have is cerebral palsy.
	snack	I turned around to get him a snack from my bag.
	crawl	He can't walk, he crawls along the ground.
	thankful	His mom was thankful for Hana.
	relieved	We were all so relieved and happy.
	celebrate	We had an ice cream to celebrate.

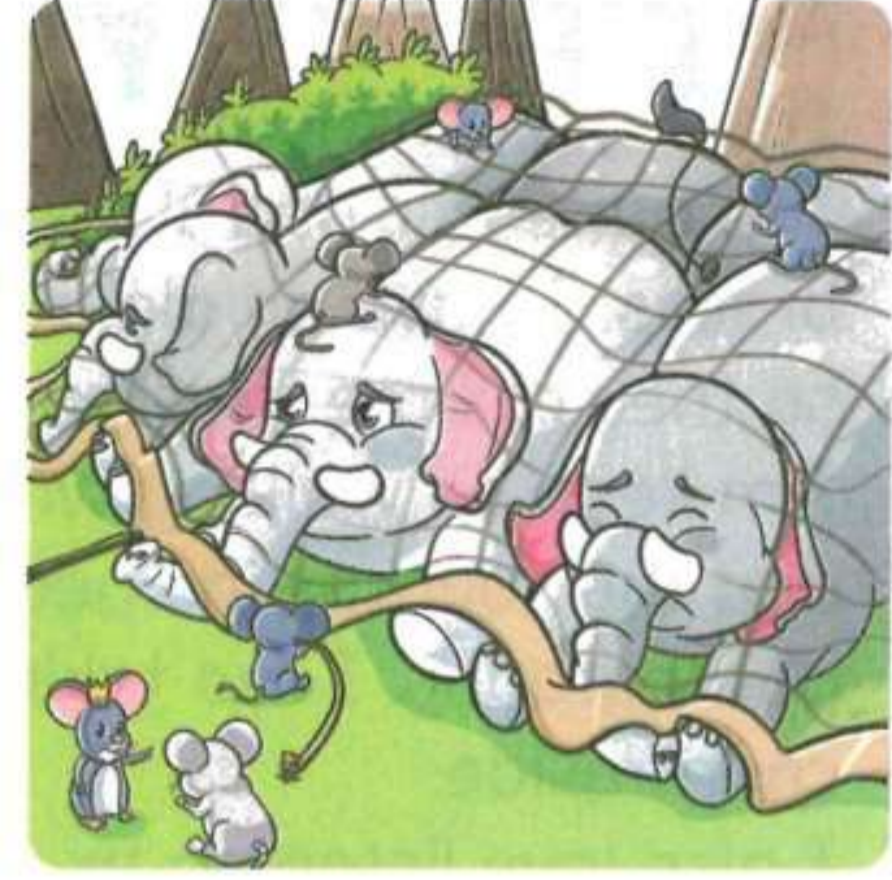
Lesson 5

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

The elephants and the mice

Many years ago, a herd of elephants lived in India. They were happy, and their leader, the queen, was the kindest and best of the elephants. During the day, it was very hot, and the elephants liked to swim in the lake.

Near that lake, there was an old village. Nobody lived in the village now, but there were hundreds of mice. Their leader, the king, was kind. The elephants and the mice lived well together.



But, one day, the elephants changed their route to the lake. This meant they walked along a path that was too close to the mice. Many of the elephants didn't see the mice. They walked on them and hurt them.

After a while, the mice said to the mouse king, "This cannot continue! It isn't safe for us!"

The mouse king said, "Don't worry - I'll talk to the elephant queen," and he went to see her.

The mouse king met the elephant queen and explained the problem. She was shocked to hear what was happening and agreed to go a different route.

"Thank you for listening and respecting our needs," said the mouse king, "One day, I hope we can help you if you're in a difficult situation."

The elephant queen nodded, but thought, "We elephants are the most powerful animals in India - why would we need help from little mice?"

A few weeks later, some hunters were watching the elephants and left nets. The next day, when the elephants went to the lake, they got caught in the nets. They couldn't move, and they roared and roared, making the loudest noise. The mice heard the loud noise and came running. Quickly, they started biting the nets. The elephants could get out!

The next day, the elephant queen came to see the mouse king and said, "Thank you so much! You saved some elephants from the hunters! You showed us that all members of our community, from the biggest to the smallest, can make a difference."

The mouse king felt like the happiest and proudest mouse in the village!

Lesson 6

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Hi everybody!

How are things ?

My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family !

I'm keen on walking with my family and friends, and the countryside near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography. I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside.

I also love listening to music from my country and all over the world. As well as this, I'm really into sports. I play volleyball at my local club, and we have games about once a month.

On the weekend, I love going to the mall with my friends and family, and then I go to my grandma's to watch movies with her. We talk a lot, and she lives near my house, so it's easy for me to get home.

I think a lot about the future, and I think I'd like to be a dentist, like my dad. What about you ? What do you look like ? What are your hobbies ? Write and tell me about yourself !



Lesson 7

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة
في نهاية الكتاب

Hana saves the boy

Hana is a good friend who lives on my street. One day, after school, she called me.

"My new walker arrived. Do you want to come over and help me decorate it?"

Excited, I ran to her house. As she gets taller, Hana receives a new walker every year.

When the new one arrives, we decorate it. Hana's favorite color is green, so we painted it green and decorated it with stars and stickers. It looked awesome.

"What should we do now, Reem ?" asked Hana.

"I think we should go to the park," I said. We often go for a walk to the park after school. Hana's physiotherapist, Donia, says it's important for Hana to get fresh air and exercise her legs so they get stronger.



At the park, we met our friends. They said Hana's new walker looked great. Our new friend, Rasha, asked Hana why she needed a walker.

"Well," she said, "when I was born, something happened to my brain and it works differently to some other people's. My dad calls it my special brain. The name for what I have is cerebral palsy."

"Can you do everything with the walker?" asked Rasha.

"No, for eating meals I have a special chair at home, and for going out in the car, I have a special seat - it's really comfortable."

Then we walked a little more with our friends. Hana was walking behind with Nadine, our other friend. Suddenly, a woman came running towards us, and she was crying.

"I can't see my little boy!" she said. "I turned around to get him a snack from my bag, and now I can't see him!"

"How old is your little boy?" asked Rasha.

"Only one. He can't walk, he crawls along the ground."

So we all looked in the grass, and the snack bar, but we didn't see him. Then, I noticed there was a group of trees behind where the woman was sitting.

"Let's look over there!" I said. "And where's Hana?"

Nobody knew. We all ran over to the trees, quite scared because it was near the road.

"Adam!" shouted the woman, and she stopped crying.

There was Adam, pulling himself up on Hana's walker, and Hana was talking to him quietly. His mom was so thankful that Hana found him. We were all so relieved and happy, and we had an ice cream to celebrate!

What is Adam's disability?

It was Thursday afternoon and for Adam, this was the best day of the week. Adam went to basketball club after school on Thursday. Today was special. His mom was waiting for him at the school entrance.

"I've brought you some water and a snack, Adam. You should eat something before you play," she said.

"Thanks, Mom, I forgot about eating," said Adam.

"That's because you're so excited," his mom said, smiling. "Come on, Adam, let's get in the car."

Fifteen minutes later, they arrived at the sports center. Adam saw his friend Hazem, who was waiting for him at the entrance.

"Hi, Adam. Are you excited about the game?" he shouted.



"Hi, Hazem! Yes! It's going to be the most exciting game ever," Adam said. He waited for his mom as she took out his wheelchair from the back of the car.

"Look, Mom," said Adam. "There's Mr Adel, my physiotherapist. He has come to watch the game. Let's say hello."

Adam started playing wheelchair basketball six months ago and this was his first game as the captain of the team. The game started well and Adam's team was winning, until the last five minutes, when the other team scored two baskets. This was serious. There were three minutes until the end of the game. Then two minutes...

Suddenly, Maged caught the ball and threw it to Hazem. Hazem quickly moved past two players and threw the ball to Adam. There were 60 seconds to go ... Adam caught the ball and stopped his wheelchair. Thirty seconds he put his arms above his head. Twenty seconds ... then he threw the ball high in the air ... and it dropped into the middle of the basketball net ! Everyone cheered loudly !

Adam's team won the match! What a great day !

III Language

Superlatives صيغة التفضيل

- When we want to compare more than two things, we can use the superlative :

• عندما نريد أن نقارن بين أكثر من شيئين، نستخدم صيغة التفضيل.

◀ تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :

١. يُضاف [the...+ est] إلى الصفة القصيرة :

1
Short
adjectives
الصفات القصيرة

→ **the + short adj. + est**

- fast → the **fastest** - old → the **oldest**

٢. يُضاف [the ... + st] إلى الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ [e] :

- large → the **largest** - close → the **closest**

٣. يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقةً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف [the...+est] إلى الصفة القصيرة :

- big → the **biggest** - thin → the **thinnest**

٤. الصفات المنتهية بحرف [y] مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول [y] إلى [i] : [the... + iest] :

- happy → the **happiest**

ex. - The queen was **the kindest** of the elephants.

2

Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

◀ تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :

صفة طويلة + **long adj.** الأقل / الأكثر **the most**

الأكثر جمالاً the most beautiful · beautiful -

ex. - Elephants are **the most powerful** animals in India.

◀ هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة [تحفظ كما هي] عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين :

1 Adjective	2 Superlative
bad سيئ	the worst الأسوأ
good جيد	the best الأفضل
little قليل [الكمية]	the least الأقل [كمية]
more + adj. أكثر من	the most + adj. الأكثر



Pop Quiz on Language

► Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- January is often the month in Egypt.
a. colder b. cold c. cold as d. coldest
- Hatem is student in the class.
a. tall b. the tallest c. taller than d. the tall
- This is the chef at the restaurant.
a. good as b. better c. best d. good
- It was the vacation.
a. worst b. worse c. bad d. badly
- What is the difficult sport ?
a. bad b. more c. most d. good
- Mom is the person in my family.
a. kind b. kinder c. kindest d. most kind
- What is the animal on land ?
a. fast as b. fast c. fastest d. faster
- What is the subject in school ?
a. most interesting b. interesting as
c. more interesting d. interesting most
- Who is the person in your family ?
a. older b. oldest c. old d. as old

IV Writing

Writing rule

Use a comma "," before "and, but and so" when the sentences contains two clauses.

استخدم الفاصلة السفلية "," قبل أدوات الربط "but - so - and" عندما تحتوى الجمل على عبارتين.

- ex.** - Adel doesn't play sport, but he likes watching sport on TV.
- Samira wants to be an engineer, and one day she'd like to live and work in Cairo.
- Tarek is keen on swimming, so he goes swimming three times a week.

Personal profile :

ملف شخصي :

Tips to write a personal profile :

نصائح لكتابة ملف شخصي :

1. Start with a greeting : Hi / Hey
1. ابدأ بالتحية مثل : Hi / Hey
2. Give your name, your age, and where you live.
2. اعط اسمك، عمرك وأين تعيش.
3. Describe what you look like.
3. صف كيف تبدو [مظهرك الخارجى].
4. Tell people about your hobbies :
4. أخبر الناس عن هواياتك :
- I'm into / I'm keen on ... / My favorite hobby is
- أنا أحب / أنا متحمس لـ / هوايتي المفضلة هي
5. Ask them to write to you :
5. اطلب منهم أن يكتبوا لك :
- I can't wait to hear from you !
- لا أطيع الانتظار حتى أسمع منك !
- Write and tell me !
- اكتب وأخبرني !

► Write a personal profile about a person you admire using these notes to help you.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Name :	Ashraf
Age :	10
School :	El Nasr Language School
What you look like :	tall - short straight hair - black eyes
Your hobbies :	reading - football - cooking
What you do on the weekend :	go swimming - visit a museum
Your future plans :	be a dentist

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 19

on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

نصوص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Dalia is
a. six b. eleven c. four d. fifteen
2. Dalia lives in
a. Cairo b. Part Said c. Alexandria d. Giza
3. Dalia has an older brother called
a. Hani b. Ali c. Adam d. Younis
4. Dalia has brown hair.
a. long b. short c. curly d. big

(Cairo - Helwan 2024)

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

dentist - photography - countryside - sports - drawing

Nada is keen on walking with her family and friends. The [1] near where she lives is really amazing. She's into [2] She likes taking photos of all the beautiful things she sees in the countryside. As well this, she's really into [3] She plays volleyball at her local club, and they have games about once a month. She thinks a lot about the future, and she think she'd like to be a [4], like her dad.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Many years ago, a **herd** of elephants lived in India. Their leader, the queen, was the kindest and best of the elephants. During the day, it was very hot, and the elephants liked to swim in the lake.

Near that lake, there was an old village. Nobody lived in the village now, but there were hundreds of mice. Their leader, the king, was kind. The elephants and the mice lived well together.

One day, some hunters were watching the elephants and left nets. The next day, when the elephants went to the lake, they got caught in the nets. They couldn't move, and they roared and roared, making the loudest noise. The mice heard the loud noise and came running. Quickly, they started biting the nets. The elephants could get out !

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Some were watching the elephants.
a. mice b. farmers c. hunters d. gazelles
2. The moral of the story is to be
a. powerful b. kind c. happy d. loud

3. The underlined word "herd" means a of animals.
 a. band b. group c. kind d. team

B. Answer the following questions.

4. How did the mice save the elephants ?

5. Why did the elephants go to the lake ?

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. We had the rain this year.
 a. less b. least c. small d. smaller
2. What do you think dangerous sport is ?
 a. most b. best c. the most d. more
3. Mom is the person in my family.
 a. kindest b. kind c. kinder d. kindly
4. He is the student in maths at my school.
 a. well b. best c. good d. better
5. Koalas are the animals in the world.
 a. laziest b. lazy c. lazier d. lazily
6. My bed is the most bed in our apartment.
 a. tidy b. big c. comfortable d. small

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. make - your - can - a difference - You - in - community.

2. fox - The - yesterday - a small - hunter - caught.

3. What - she - like - does - look ?

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A short story you have read"

Guiding elements:

- basketball • wheelchair • match • won

.....

Reading comprehension Demonstrate understanding of specific details

- تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.
التحدي أجد صعوبة في فهم تفاصيل معينة في النص.
مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على فهم النص جيداً حيث تكون الإجابة موجودة في النص بشكل مباشر.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer.

David Aguilar Amphoux is from Spain. When he was 18, he built a prosthetic arm with plastic bricks because he only had one arm. He designed it with a movable elbow and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a comic book about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people understand more about disabilities. Prosthetic arms and legs can be difficult to make, but David made his cheaply with plastic bricks. After university, he wants to create cheap prosthetic arms and legs for people.

شرح العمل

تقوم المعلومات الواردة فيما من استنتاج معلومات أخرى مثلاً:

- ديفيد كان له ذراع واحد.
- صنع ديفيد أطراف صناعية رخيصة الثمن للناس.

- David used bricks to build a prosthetic arm.
a. metal b. wood c. glass d. plastic
- David's dad has written a comic book about
a. inventions b. his son c. his life d. plastic
- David wants to create cheap prosthetic arms
a. after university b. in 2050 c. at home d. with Aguilar

Step 2

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions.

If we were all the same, life would be boring. In Mrs Mona's class, Asser is different to his friends because he's tall and he has brown eyes. He's good at science, but his friend Seleem is good at geography. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is straight and he wears glasses. Injy has curly hair and wears braces to help her teeth get straight. The important thing is that we look after each other. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different.

- Seleem is good at
a. geography b. English
c. science d. maths
- Asser has eyes.
a. blue b. black
c. gray d. brown
- has straight hair and wears glasses.
a. Mona b. Seleem
c. Waleed d. Injy

Skills 2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [وصف شخص] و [التواصل مع الآخرين] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها في تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

Write the meaning :

Describing your friend

..... طويل
 مختلف
 شعر مجعد
 دعامات الأسنان
 نظارة
 كرسي متحرك
 رائع - عظيم

Communicating

..... رسائل
 لغة الإشارة
 يتواصل
 صعوبات السمع
 رسائل بريد الكتروني
 صعب

Step 2 Sentences

Complete the sentences :

1. We are to each other.
2. He has hair and black eyes.
3. He wears to help him see better.
4. He wears to help his teeth get straight.
5. He is at science.

Step 3 Topics

Write a personal profile using the sentences :

"Your friend"

.....

Write a paragraph using the sentences :

"Ways to communicate"

.....

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٣٨ جملة].

1 A description of a friend

Tom is my best friend^[1]. He is 12 years old^[2]. He is from England^[3]. He is English^[4]. He is tall and wears glasses^[5]. He has short brown hair^[6]. He has got big green eyes^[7]. He can play football, but he can't play tennis^[8]. He loves reading and always has a book in his hand^[9]. His favorite color is yellow^[10]. His favorite food is pizza^[11]. He also likes pets^[12]. He has got a small puppy^[13]. He is friendly and nice^[14]. He is always happy^[15].

2 A personal profile

Hi everybody!

I'm Malek and I'm eleven^[16]. I live in Cairo and I go to El Salam School^[17]. I'm in grade 6^[18]. My best friends at school are Omar and Ali^[19]. We're in the same class^[20]. I have short dark hair and I wear glasses^[21]. I have a brother, Anas, and a sister, Malak^[22]. I'm really into sports^[23]. I love watching football games on TV with my dad^[24]. On the weekend, I often meet my friends in the park to play basketball^[25]. Omar records the most points, so everybody wants him to be in their team^[26]. I want to be an engineer^[27]. Write and tell me about yourself^[28].

3 Communicating with people with hearing difficulties

From hend@gmail.com

To heba@gmail.com

Subject communicating with people with hearing difficulties

Hi Heba,

How are you^[29]? Let me tell you about the best ways to communicate with people with hearing difficulties^[30]. First of all, if someone doesn't understand you from people with hearing difficult, repeat what you said differently^[31]. Use American sign language^[32]. For example, you can put your hand on your forehead and move it away to say "Hello"^[33]. If there is more than one person in a conversation take turns to talk^[34]. Make sure you are facing the person you are talking to and speak clearly^[35]. Use pen on paper or whiteboards to write what you want to say^[36]. In a noisy place, move to a quieter one if possible^[37]. See you soon^[38].

Lots of love,
Hend

Review on Unit 4

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الرابعة في ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

glasses	نظارة	prosthetic arm	ذراع اصطناعية	herd	قطيع
braces	تقويم الأسنان	kindness	عطف	hunter	صياد
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	advertisement	إعلان	powerful	قوى
disability	عجز - إعاقة	proud	فخور	leader	قائد
communicate	يتواصل	movable elbow	كوع متحرك	respect	يحترم
sign language	لغة الإشارة	confident	واثق	route	طريق

Language

1 Reported questions الأُسئلة في الكلام غير المباشر.

A Yes / No question → السؤال بـ "هل"

ex. - Ashraf said, "Does he have any pets ?"
- Ashraf asked if he had any pets.

B Wh-question → السؤال بكلمة استفهام

ex. - "What are you doing ?" Adam said.
- Adam asked what I was doing.

2 Superlatives صيغة التفضيل

A Short adjectives → الصفات القصيرة

ex. - The giraffe is the tallest animal in the world.

B Long adjectives → الصفات الطويلة

ex. - Butterflies are the most beautiful creatures.
- Today is the best day at school.

Test 20 on Unit 4

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

• نصوص الاستماع
• فى نهاية الكتاب.
• التقييمات الشهرية
• فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Miss Rana wants us to get into
a. groups b. buses c. wheelchairs d. classes
2. Groups will make about animals in tropical rainforests.
a. rulers b. posters c. erasers d. sports
3. The poster should be a/an for the rainforest.
a. hearing aid b. transportation c. help d. advertisement
4. She would like posters with lots of interesting information.
a. ugly b. big c. colorful d. dark

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

movie – speaking – newspaper – opinion – have

Sherif: Mom, I'd really like to understand English better !

Mom : What do you think about [1] English all day with me ?

Sherif: I don't know, Mom. In my [2], it might be difficult.

Mom : What about speaking English while we [3] our lunch then ?

Sherif: To me, that's a much better idea !

Mom : Great ! What about watching an English [4] this evening ?

Sherif: I think that could work well. There's a fantastic movie I'd like to see. Thanks, Mom !

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi everybody !

How are things ? My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family ! I'm keen on walking with my family and friends, and the countryside near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography. I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside. As well as this, I'm really into sports. I play volleyball at my local club, and we have games about once a month.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is mainly about " ".
a. Alexandria b. Alex Modern School
c. Sports d. Dalia
2. The underlined expression "keen on" means
a. far from b. different to c. interested in d. worried about
3. is Dalia's favorite hobby.
a. Chess b. Photography c. Reading d. Tennis

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What does Dalia look like ?

.....

5. Why do they call Dalia the baby of the family ?

.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write Yes or No.

- 1. There're wind chimes in the sensory garden. [.....]
- 2. Mayar had a concert next week. [.....]
- 3. Asser's parents showed him a large information board. [.....]
- 4. Mayar and grandma helped to plant flowers. [.....]

B. Read and answer the question.

- 1. Where did Asser see his parents ?
.....
- 2. What was Asser worried that his parents might forget ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. He used the material to make a beautiful invention.
a. cheap b. cheaper c. cheapest d. cheaper than
- 2. She asked him if he been to France before.
a. having b. has c. have d. had
- 3. We had the most quiz today.
a. short b. difficult c. easy d. long
- 4. My dad asked what time I from school.
a. arrives b. arrive c. arrived d. arriving
- 5. He asked when the school
a. start b. starts c. started d. starting
- 6. What is the sport ?
a. more dangerous b. most dangerous
c. dangerous than d. dangerous as

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1. is - the - wheelchair - He - team - in - basketball.
.....
- 2. to communicate - is - What - best - way - the ?
.....
- 3. saved - from - The mice - the hunter - elephants - the.
.....

7 Write your personal profile of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

- Name
- Your hobbies
- What do you look like ?
- What are your future plans ?

.....
.....

• **1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We are not the same. Everyone is
a. same b. difficult c. bad d. different
2. I'm tall, but Seleem is
a. small b. good c. short d. tall
3. I have straight hair, but Yara has hair.
a. curly b. brown c. dark d. blond
4. Some of us are good at art, and others are good at
a. painting b. swimming c. music d. sports

(Assiut - Educational supervision 2024)

• **2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.**

book – disabilities – prosthetic – paint – elbow

David is from Spain. When he was eighteen years old, he built a [1] arm with plastic bricks because he had only one arm. He designed it with a movable [2] and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a comic [3] about David. Everyone thinks it is great because it helps people understand more about [4]

(Cairo - Al-Tabin 2024)

• **3 Read the following text and answer the questions.**

All people are different, but they are all important. Some people are short and some are tall. My friend Noha uses a wheelchair because she can't walk well. Amira has a hearing aid because she has problems with hearing. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they are different. "Our school is for everyone. We are all equally important," said Mrs Doaa." But what should we do if we see someone being mean at school?" asked Injy. "I saw someone being unkind to Tarek the other day because he forgot his glasses, and so he couldn't see well". "You should always come and tell me or another teacher," said Mrs Mona. "Here at the school we should all help each other".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "mean" means
a. kind b. good c. unkind d. nice
2. Noha uses a because she can't walk.
a. car b. wheelchair c. bike d. wheel
3. Amira has problems with hearing, so she has a hearing
a. aid b. rings c. tool d. bracelet

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What happened to Tarek when he forgot his glasses? (Minya - Mallawi 2024)

.....

5. Give a suitable title for the text.

.....

• **4 The Reader**

A. Read and write Yes or No.

1. The parents were making a playground with a sensory garden. (Cairo - Nasr city 2024) [.....]
2. Asser plays the guitar in the school concert. (Alexandria - west Alexandria 2024) [.....]
3. Shady is Asser's cousin. (Minya - Mallawi 2024) [.....]
4. Grandma made coffee for children. (Giza - October 2024) [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. What was Asser's parents' secret ? (Monofia - Shebin El Koom 2024)
.....
2. How did Asser feel about the concert at the end of the story ? (Damietta 2024)
.....

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Our teacher asked we could all see the whiteboard. (Damietta 2024)

a. that	b. to	c. if	d. not to
---------	-------	-------	-----------
2. She asked what grandma and Dalia after school. (Dakahlia - West Mansoura 2024)

a. does	b. do	c. did	d. doing
---------	-------	--------	----------
3. What is the difficult sport ? (Ismailia - Al Qassasin 2024)

a. more	b. most	c. good	d. bad
---------	---------	---------	--------
4. It was the vacation. (Beheira - Rosetta 2024)

a. worst	b. worse	c. bad	d. badly
----------	----------	--------	----------
5. Lake Nasser is the lake in Egypt. (Kafr El-Sheikh - Educational supervision 2024)

a. big	b. bigger	c. small	d. biggest
--------	-----------	----------	------------
6. My mom asked me what time my homework. (Luxor 2024)

a. do I do	b. did I	c. I did	d. I do
------------	----------	----------	---------

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. about - do - What - think - you - stories ? (Cairo - Helwan 2024)
.....
2. is - and - glasses - wears - Hany - tall , (Luxor - Luxor 2024)
.....
3. you - work - us - Would - like - with - to ? (Minya - Maghagha 2024)
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A short description of a friend"

Guiding elements:

(Cairo - Al Sahel / Minya - Samalut 2024)

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|-----------|--------|
| • tall | • eyes | • glasses | • hair |
|--------|--------|-----------|--------|
-

Review 2 on Units 3 & 4

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ٣ و ٤

I Vocabulary

Unit 3

green roofs	اسقف خضراء	neat	مرتب	recycling	إعادة التدوير
sleds	زلجات	kindergarten	روضة أطفال	encourage	يشجع
reindeer	حيوان الرنة	floods	فيضانات	collapse	ينهار
timetable	جدول مواعيد	tournament	دورة رياضية	steep	شديد الانحدار
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	art club	نادى الفنون	principal	مدير المدرسة - المسئول
flexible	مرن	palace	قصر	court	محكمة / ملعب
scribe	كاتب	repair	يصلح	passionate	شغوف
competition	مسابقة	demonstration	إيضاح - عرض	schedule	جدول

Unit 4

braces	تقويم الاسنان	design	يصمم - تصميم	respect	يحترم
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	university	جامعة	computing	استعمال الحاسبات
hearing aid	سماعة الاذن	confident	واثق	member	عضو
disability	عجز - إعاقة	advertisement	اعلان	crawl	يزحف
sign language	لغة الإشارة	proud	فخور	hunter	صياد
text messages	رسائل نصية	herd	قطيع	leader	قائد
route	طريق				

II Language

Unit 3

1 Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

●●●●●
always

●●●○
usually

●●○○○
often

●○○○○
sometimes

○○○○○
never

ex. - He **is always** busy on weekends.

- We **usually wear** the school uniform.

2 Using make me + adj. صفة

► **Formation** : التكوين

Subject + make(s) + object + adjective صفة

► **Usage** : الاستخدام

استخدم [**make me**] للحديث عن شعورك بسبب شيء ما أو شخص ما.

ex. - Swimming **makes me healthy**.

3 Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

Statement : الجملة الخبرية :



"I like making jewelry," said Fares. → Fares said **he liked** making jewelry.

Unit 4

Superlative صيغة التفضيل

1

Short
adjectives

الصفات القصيرة

→ the + short adj. + est

ex. - The whale is **the biggest** sea animal.

2

Long
adjectives

الصفات الطويلة

→ the most الأكثر / least الأقل + long adj. صفة طويلة

ex. - Fruits are **the most delicious** food for me.

Test 22 on Units 3 & 4

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

• **1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We go to school from to Friday.
a. Sunday b. Saturday c. Thursday d. Monday
2. My school has to be neat.
a. desk b. uniform c. subject d. tool
3. I often walk to school when it's dry and
a. stormy b. warm c. sunny d. cold
4. We have a/an for our lunch.
a. second b. hour c. minute d. century

• **2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.**

hits - sounds - communicate - talk - meowing

Today our teacher invited an interesting person called Mr Kamal to come and [1] to us in class. Mr Kamal told us the best ways to [2] with people who have hearing problems. He asked us what [3] we heard every day. We had a lot of ideas. My friend said he heard other people talking and I said I heard our cat [4] in the morning!

• **3 Read the following text and answer the questions.**

There was a smart fox in the woods. He saw a bird on a tree with cheese. He wanted the cheese, so he made a plan. He said to the bird, "Hi, pretty bird. You look so nice and shiny. I wonder how is your sound. Can you sing for me?" The bird liked the fox's words. It wanted to show its sound, so it opened its mouth to sing. When it did, the cheese fell out. The fox got the cheese and ran away. He said to the bird, "Thanks for the cheese and the sound. Your sound is good, but you are not clever." The bird saw its mistake and felt bad. It learned something that day : do not believe nice words.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The moral of the story is not to believe words.
a. ugly b. bad c. fast d. nice
2. The underlined word "smart" means
a. nice b. bad c. clever d. slow
3. The bird wanted to show its beautiful to the fox.
a. feathers b. family c. nest d. sound

B. Answer the following questions.

4. How did the fox get the cheese ?

.....

5. How did the bird feel at the end of the story ?

.....

• **4 The Reader**

A. Read and write Yes or No.

- 1. Asser went to the park with Shady and Shady's dad. [.....]
- 2. Asser's parents looked surprised when they saw Asser at the park. [.....]
- 3. The sensory garden is for Mayar only. [.....]
- 4. The fountain was the best thing for Asser. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

- 1. What was Asser's parents secret ?
.....
- 2. Where did Shady meet Asser ?
.....

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- 1. She asked what they doing.
a. will b. were c. was d. has
- 2. It's cold in summer in Egypt.
a. always b. often c. usually d. never
- 3. Cheetah is the animal in the world.
a. faster b. fastest c. faster than d. fast as
- 4. Art me relaxed and happy.
a. make b. makes c. making d. to make
- 5. He helpful, so everyone loves him.
a. are always b. alway is c. is always d. always
- 6. Lake Nasser is lake in Egypt.
a. biggest b. bigger c. as big d. the biggest

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- 1. green - Why - good - are - for - roofs - the environment ?
.....
- 2. Playing - feel - makes - chess - excited - me.
.....
- 3. hair - blue - She - straight - and - has - eyes.
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Studying the past"

Guiding elements:

- study • history • society • stories

.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- It was a/an day.
a. happy b. normal c. easy d. strange
- They had a outage.
a. power b. music c. video d. audio
- They were looking at the whiteboard.
a. black b. interactive c. lazy d. normal
- Suddenly all the information
a. appeared b. arrived c. disappeared d. cleared

(Luxor - Isna 2024)

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

guitar – concert – problem – award – talented

Interviewer : Wow Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're so [1]

Mazen : Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a [2]

Interviewer : I'm not surprised. You played the [3] and sang for over an hour.

Mazen : It went very quickly. But no one knew about the problem I had before the concert.

Interviewer : A [4]! What was that ?

Mazen : I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing in a different room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where.

Interviewer : Where did you find it ?

Mazen : My friend found it behind the piano.

(Luxor 2024)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres.

Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating !

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The general idea of the text is about a "".
a. Material b. Museum c. Sculpture d. Subject
- The underlined word "famous" means
a. well-known b. terrible c. different d. dark
- Tall Tree and the Eye is in
a. France b. London c. Egypt d. Spain

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Why did the artist use stainless steel ?
.....

5. How do you know that Kapoor was a great artist ?
.....

• **4 The Reader**

A. Read and write YES or NO.

- 1. Children had a good time with grandma. [.....]
- 2. Mom told Mayar to remember her apron for the pottery classes. [.....]
- 3. Mayar went to the garage to get her ball. [.....]
- 4. Shady practiced his song a lot for the concert. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

- 1. Where was grandma waiting Asser ?
.....
- 2. Who was worried about the concert ?
.....

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- 1. He can help you if you him.
a. asking b. to ask c. asked d. ask
- 2. I will mop the water.
a. out b. up c. on d. away
- 3. She listened to an audiobook about two hours.
a. on b. of c. for d. under
- 4. If you want to get up early, early.
a. to sleep b. sleep c. sleeps d. sleeping
- 5. If you water the plants, they die.
a. don't b. doesn't c. won't d. didn't
- 6. When I finished my project, I it to my teacher.
a. giving b. give c. gave d. gives

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- 1. your - attention - a lot - Give - of - cat.
.....
- 2. away - the - she - When - put - did - dishes ?
.....
- 3. paint - vase - He - the - to - used - decorate.
.....

• **7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

"A pet"

Guiding elements:

- food • sleep • vet • vaccine
-
-

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nebsin didn't want to His bed was comfortable.
a. play b. run c. get up d. watch TV
2. When he went into the kitchen, his mom was making
a. breakfast b. a cake c. juice d. dinner
3. Nebsin's father was a
a. doctor b. vet c. farmer d. scribe
4. Nebsin didn't know what he wanted to do in the future.
a. job b. test c. game d. homework

(Sharqia - 10th of Ramadan 2024)

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

racket – rocket – club – animations – nervous

I joined a new club at school this term. We are learning to use computers to make [1] It's great fun ! At the moment, I'm making a story with moving pictures about somebody who makes a [2] and goes to the moon. I also go to a music [3] every week. I play the violin and I'll be in a concert next week - I'm a bit [4]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Schools around the world want to do the same thing-to give children a good education. In some countries, children start elementary school at seven years old. In other countries, the children are younger. In other countries in Africa, for example Kenya, some people have a nomadic culture, where they move from place to place. This means their teachers have to be flexible with the timetable. The teacher chooses subjects which are the most important at different times.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about different " ".
a. Countries b. Schools c. Children d. Timetables
2. The opposite of the underlined word "start" is
a. move b. find c. hang d. finish
3. In Kenya, teachers have to be
a. late b. nervous c. nomadic d. flexible

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What's the importance of schools for children ?
.....
5. How is the school timetable in nomadic areas ?
.....

(Cairo - Helwan 2024)

4 The Reader

A. Read and write Yes or No.

1. Grandma went to Mayar's house every day. [.....]
2. Asser was worried about the concert. [.....]

3. Shady is Asser's friend. [.....]
4. Mayar found her parents digging at the park. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. What instrument does Asser play ?
.....
2. What was Asser doing in Grandma's yard ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I brush my teeth. I do that every day.
a. sometimes b. always c. never d. often
2. He excited when he visits his favorite places.
a. is always b. never is c. often is d. are usually
3. She said that the bus there.
a. were b. is c. will be d. was
4. They said that had finished their homework.
a. her b. they c. we d. I
5. My friend said that he meet me at 7:00 at the park.
a. would b. will c. can d. are
6. He that he had a stomachache.
a. says b. tell c. tells d. said

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

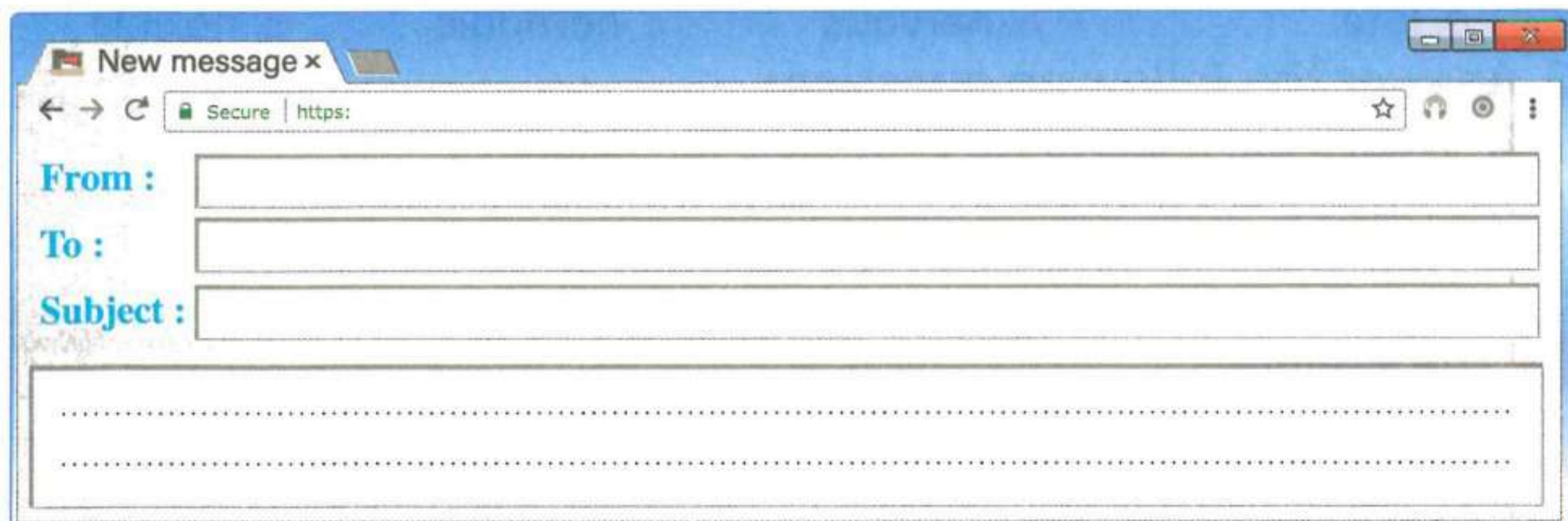
1. education – important – School trips – very – for – are.
.....
2. the – had – She – bridge – said – collapsed.
.....
3. the – nomadic – in – How – timetables – are – schools ?
.....

7 Write an email of SEVENTY [70] words about green roofs to your friend Anas.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Your friend's email address is anas@gmail.com. Your name is Malek and your email address is malek@gmail.com.

Guiding elements: • gardens • environment • nature • design





★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

• Vocabulary

architect	مهندس معمارى	cool	معتدل الحرارة
police officer	ضابط شرطة	close to	قريب من
comfortable	مريح	die	يموت
character	شخصية	local	محلى
mud bricks	قوالب الطوب الطينى	adult	بالغ [راشد]
climate	مناخ	architecture	هندسة / طراز معماري
work place	ورشة عمل	university	الجامعة
encourage	يشجع	low-cost	منخفض التكلفة
drawing	الرسم	domed roofs	اسقف على شكل قبة
painting	الرسم بالالوان	public	عام
attractive	جذاب	award	جائزة
features	سمات	thick walls	حوائط سميكة

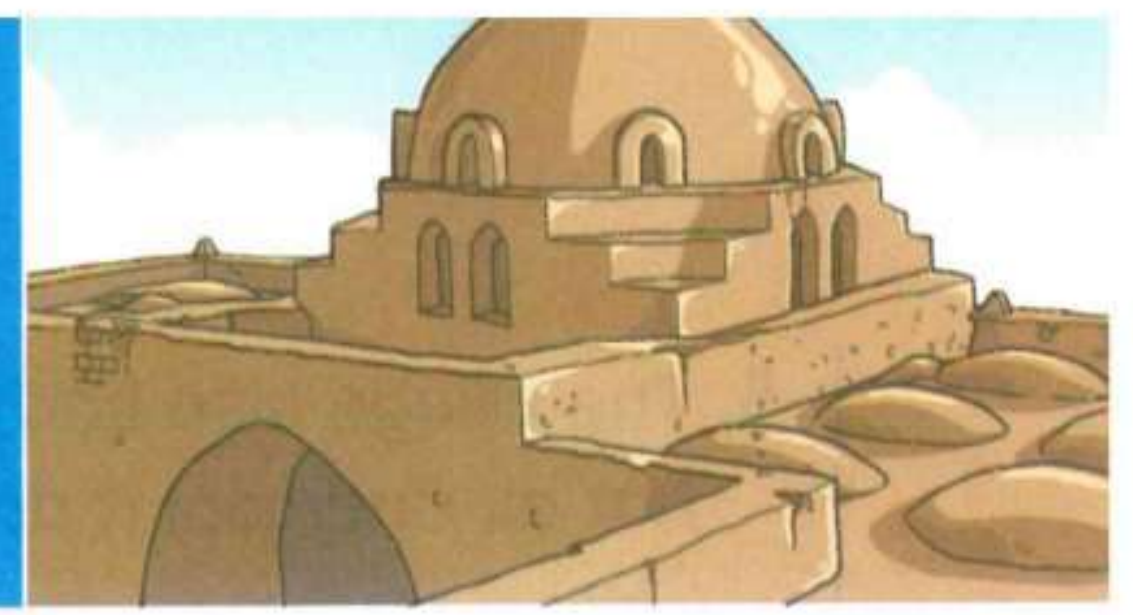
• Definitions تعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
public	something that everybody in the community can see or use
feature	an important part of something, that you notice because it seems important or interesting
domed	something which has a round shape
architecture	designing and making buildings
mud brick	a type of building material made of earth
attractive	nice and pleasant to look at

Main points on Hassan Fathy's biography

1. Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian architect who was born in Alexandria in 1900.
حسن فتحى هو مهندس مصرى شهير ولد فى الاسكندرية عام ١٩٠٠.
2. As he was a child, he was creative and he loved drawing and painting.
عندما كان طفلاً، كان مبدعاً، فكان يحب الرسم والتلوين.
3. He studied architecture at Cairo University and later, worked as an architect.
درس الهندسة المعمارية فى جامعة القاهرة ولاحقاً عمل كمهندس معمارى.
4. Fathy became famous for building comfortable, attractive houses using low-cost materials.
اصبح فتحى مشهور ببناء منازل مريحة وجذابة باستخدام مواد خام منخفضة التكلفة.
5. His houses have Egyptian features for example domed roofs and mud bricks.
تميز المنازل التى يصممها بالسماط المصرية على سبيل المثال الاسقف المقببة [ذات القبة] والطوب الطينى.
6. New Gurna was Fathy's first big project that began in 1940s.
"نيوجورنا" هو أول وأكبر مشروع قام به فتحى والذى بدأ فى فترة الأربعينات.
7. Fathy built new homes in the traditional style.
قام فتحى ببناء منازل جديدة على الطراز التقليدى.
8. Fathy built other public buildings, for example, schools, for Egypt's Ministry of Education.
بنى فتحى مباني اخرى عامة، على سبيل المثال المدارس لوزارة التربية والتعليم المصرية.
9. Today, we can see Hassan Fathy's work is important for three reasons :
يمكننا اليوم أن نرى أهمية أعمال حسن فتحى لثلاثة أسباب :
 - a. He understood that traditional architecture was great.
ادرك أن الهندسة المعمارية التقليدية كانت رائعة.
 - b. The houses he built are very comfortable for people.
المنازل التى قام ببنائها مريحة جداً للناس.
 - c. He knew it is important to build for the local climate.
ادرك أنه من الهام أن يبني بناء مناسب للمناخ المحلى.
10. His houses have high domed roofs and thick mud walls to keep them cool.
تميز منازلهم بأسقف مقببة عالية وجدران من القوالب الطينية سميكة لإبقائها باردة.

New Baris



★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Vocabulary

planning	تخطيط	position	موقع
Kharga	صحراء "الخارجة"	courtyard	فناء [ساحة]
rise	ترتفع	provide	يمد / يزود
secondly	ثانيًا	community	مجتمع
well	بئر	social center	مركز اجتماعي
hold	يحمل [يمسك]	design	يصمم / تصميم
domed roofs	الاسطح المقببة [ذات قبه]	temperature	درجة الحرارة
sadly	من المحزن	degree	درجة
create	ينشأ	luckily	لحسن الحظ
respect	يحترم	wind catchers	مصائد الرياح
organization	منظمة	shade	ظل
challenges	تحديات [صعوبات]	shaded seating area	منطقة للجلوس مظلة
firstly	أولاً	building	مبنى
builder	بناء	unfinished	لم تكتمل
mud brick	طوب لِين	villa	فيلا

Main points on New Baris

1. The ODD organization asked Hassan Fathy to design a village in the desert at Kharga for the farmers.
طلبت منظمة ODD من "حسن فتحى" أن يصمم قرية للفلاحين في صحراء الخارجة.
2. It was important to keep the village cool because the temperature sometimes rose to 50 degrees.
كان من الضروري أن تحتفظ القرية بدرجة حرارة معتدلة لان في بعض الأوقات كانت تصل درجة الحرارة إلى 50 درجة مئوية.
3. They needed to find water for farmer's crops and families before building the new houses.
كانوا في حاجة إلى توفير المياه لمحاصيل الفلاحين وعائلاتهم قبل البدء في بناء المنازل الجديدة.
4. To keep the village houses cool, they were made of mud bricks.
صنعت منازل القرية من الطوب اللبن لكي يحتفظوا بدرجة الحرارة المعتدلة بها.

5. The village also had windcatchers - they are tall buildings which hold hot air and cool it down.

وكان بالقرية أيضًا مصائد رياح وهي عبارة عن مباني مرتفعة تحتفظ بالهواء الساخن وتخفض درجة حرارته.

6. Fathy designed the area so that the buildings gave shade to people in the streets.

صمم حسن فتحى المنطقة بحيث أن تعطى المباني ظلًا للناس في الشوارع.

7. He added a taktabosh courtyard which provided a shaded seating area outside.

أضاف حسن فتحى فناء تكتابوش والذي وفر للناس منطقة مظلة للجلوس بالخارج.

8. Hassan Fathy added the suk and other buildings. He believed it was important to create communities, not just houses.

أضاف حسن فتحى السوق ومباني أخرى لأنه كان يؤمن بأنه من المهم أن ينشئ مجتمعات وليس فقط منازل.

9. New Baris really was a place that provided a community for the people.

كانت نيو بارس مكانًا يوفر مجتمعًا للناس.

10. You can see and respect Hassan Fathy's designs, today.

ومازلنا حتى اليوم نرى ونحترم تصميمات حسن فتحى.



Pop Quiz

on Non-Fiction Reader

1 Read and write Yes or No.

1. Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian athlete. [.....]
2. Fathy was creative and he loved drawing and building. [.....]
3. Fathy's houses have Egyptian features. [.....]
4. Fathy built New Gurna that was his last, smallest project. [.....]
5. Today, there isn't any of Hassan Fathy's work. [.....]

2 Complete the following sentences.

1. Hassan Fathy studied at University.
2. Hassan Fathy was a very creative
3. Fathy's buildings are comfortable and attractive using materials.
4. A taktabosh courtyard provided a seating area outside.
5. Hassan Fathy wanted to create, not just houses.
6. are tall buildings which hold hot air and cool it down.
7. To keep the village houses cool, they were made of



Fiction Reader
A Wonderful Surprise
مفاجأة رائعة

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

SB Pages [88 - 93]

put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه	busy	مشغول
neatly	بصورة منظمة / بدقة	daughter	ابنة
look out of	ينظر من خلال	apron	مريلة [مئزر]
surprise	مفاجئة	pick up	يلتقط
cookies	كعك محلي	hug	يحتضن
guitar	جيتار	come out	يخرج
gate	بوابة	braille	طريقة [برايل] للمكفوفين
smile	يبتسم	muddy	موجل / طيني
wave	يلوح / يشاور	wonderful	رائع

• Key vocabulary

SB Pages [94 - 98]

audiobook	كتاب صوتي / مسموع	park	حديقة
parents	الوالدين	sit down	يجلس
yard	ساحة / فناء	remember	يتذكر
water bottle	زجاجة مياه	shovel	مجرفة / جاروف
thick bushes	شجيرات كثيفة	worried	قلق
concert	حفلة موسيقى	Yes, of course.	نعم بالطبع.
plan	خطة / يخطط	have fun	يستمتع
covered in mud	مغطى بالطين	garage	جراج

• Key vocabulary

SB Pages [99 - 103]

dig	يحفر	wind chimes	اجراس الرياح
surprised	مندهش	wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
board	سبورة	reply	يرد - رد
sensory garden	الحديقة الحسية	spade	مجرفة - جاروف
builders	عمال بناء	playground	ملعب
fountain	نافورة	touch	يلمس
invite	يدعو	wide paths	ممرات واسعة
laugh	يضحك	hang	يعلق
equipment	معدات	secret	سر
neighborhood	حي		

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
audiobook	An audiobook is a book which you listen to on a device. The words are spoken, not written down. الكتاب الصوتي هو كتاب تستمع إليه على جهاز. وتكون الكلمات منطوقة وغير مدونه.
muddy	When soil is wet, it becomes mud. When something is muddy, it has a lot of mud on it. عندما تكون التربة مبللة، تتحول إلى طين. عندما يكون الشيء طيني، هذا يعني أنه يوجد الكثير من الطين عليه [به].
braille	Braille is a way of writing words for people who can't see well. You touch the braille with your fingers to read it. برايل هي طريقة لكتابة الكلمات لهؤلاء الذين لا يمكنهم الرؤية جيدًا. يمكنك أن تلمس الحروف المكتوبة بطريقة برايل بأصابعك لكي تقرأها.
secret	A secret is something that you don't tell anybody, or want anybody to find out. السِر هو شيء ما لا تريد أن تخبر به أحدًا ولا تريد أن يكتشفه أحدًا.
bush	A bush is a short tree with a lot of branches and leaves. الشجيرة هي شجرة قصيرة بها الكثير من الفروع والأوراق.
shovel	A shovel is a tool for digging. الجاروف هو أداة للحفر.
garage	A garage is the room of the home where people keep their cars. الجراج هو حجرة ملحقة بالمنزل بها يحفظ [يضع] الناس سياراتهم.
trunk	A trunk is the area at the back of a car. You can put bags or large objects in it. صندوق السيارة هي المنطقة الخلفية من السيارة. يمكنك وضع الحقائب والاشياء الكبيرة بها.
hug	You hug somebody when you put your arms around them. We hug a person to show we care. عندما تحضن أحدًا فأنت تضع ذراعيك حوله. نحن نحضن الأشخاص لنظهر مدى اهتمامنا بهم.
wind chime	A wind chime is a decoration which makes a nice sound in the wind. الجرس الهوائي هو ديكور [زينه] حيث تصنع صوت لطيف عندما تحركها الرياح.

1

The beginning

بداية القصة

It was the end of the school day, and Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly. He looked out of the classroom window for his mom, but he couldn't see her.

Mrs Eman, his teacher, took the children outside. Then Asser saw his grandma waiting at the school gates. He smiled and waved at her.



Asser loved it when his grandma picked him up, and he hugged her.

"What a nice surprise! I didn't know you were coming today" he said.

"Your mom is busy, so I'm here today," she smiled. "Now, where's your sister?"

They saw Mayar come out of her classroom. She was with her friends, and she was carrying a book. She looked very happy.

Mayar's teacher, Mrs. Azza, came to talk to Grandma.

Mrs Azza said, "Mayar has a new book. It has words that you can read to her. It also has words in braille that she can read herself".

"Thank you!" said Grandma. "We can read this together this evening".

"Are we going to your house today, Grandma?" asked Mayar.

"Yes, we are. Your mom and dad are busy. Should we make cookies?"

"Yes, please!". said Asser and Mayar.



The children stayed at Grandma's house until the evening. Their parents arrived after dinner.

"Thanks for having the children, Mom," said their mom.

"You're welcome, Salma! I love having them here!" replied Grandma.

"Did you have a good time with Grandma today" asked their mom.

"Yes, of course! And look at my new book from school!" said Mayar.

"It's great. Let's read it when we get home," said their dad.

Their mom and dad were happy to see Mayar's new book. When Mayar was a baby, her mom and dad learned braille. They helped to read. Now, they love reading with their daughter in the evenings.



The family all got in the car to go home. As Asser went to put the school bags in the open trunk, he noticed something strange. He saw his mom and dad's boots there, and they were muddy.

"Their boots are really muddy. Have Mom and Dad been to a farm?" thought Asser.

Asser then got into the car, and they all went home.





The next morning, at breakfast, the children's mom said, "Grandma will pick you up from school again today".

"Are you going to be home late, Mom?" asked Asser.

"Yes, I'm very busy this week. I'll pick you up from Grandma's at seven o'clock".

"OK" said Asser.

"It's music club today, so don't forget your guitar, Asser. Mayar, you have pottery classes at lunchtime, so remember your apron".

Questions & Answers

on the beginning

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح اعدت خصيصًا لتمكين الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

1. Read and write Yes or No.

Yes

1. Mrs Eman is Asser's teacher.	Yes
2. Grandma was waiting at the school gate.	Yes
3. Asser loved when his Grandma picked him up.	Yes
4. Mayar was carrying a book.	Yes
5. Mayar's parents learned braille when she was a baby.	Yes
6. Asser's mom told him not to forget his guitar.	Yes

★ تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط.

2. Read and write Yes or No.

No

Correction

1. Mrs <u>Azza</u> is Asser's teacher.	No	Eman
2. <u>Asser's</u> book has words in braille.	No	Mayar's
3. Children made <u>cakes</u> with Grandma.	No	cookies
4. Mayar has <u>music</u> club.	No	pottery
5. Asser needs to remember his <u>apron</u> .	No	guitar
6. Asser found his parent's <u>bags</u> in the car.	No	boots

3. Read and answer the questions.

Answers

1. Who picked children from school ?	Grandma.
2. Why couldn't the children's parents pick them up ?	Because they were busy.
3. What was Mayar carrying ?	A book.
4. When did Mayar's parents learn braille ?	When she was a baby.
5. What did Asser see in the car trunk ?	His parents' boots but they were muddy.
6. What should Mayer take for her pottery classes ?	Apron

General Exercises

on the beginning of the story

Mini Test

1

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. When Asser saw Grandma, he smiled and hugged her. [.....]
2. Mayar has dance classes in the evening. [.....]
3. Mayar was carrying a book and looked happy. [.....]
4. Mom and Dad learned braille when Mayar was a baby. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where was Grandma waiting for Asser and Mayar ?
.....
2. Who was Mrs Azza ?
.....

Mini Test

2

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Asser saw his parents' boots in the car trunk. [.....]
2. Mom and dad's boots were clean. [.....]
3. Mayar has a new bike. [.....]
4. Asser didn't hug his grandma when he saw her. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Grandma come to pick Asser and Mayar up ?
.....
2. What did Grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar ?
.....

2

The Middle

منتصف القصة

"Can we listen to an audiobook, Mom" asked Mayar.

"Yes, of course", her mom said.

While Mayar and her mom chose an audio book, Asser looked out of the window. He was thinking about his school concert next week. He hoped his parents remembered it. He really wanted them to come and watch him. Asser wanted to ask his mom about the concert, but she looked tired. He decided to ask her later.



On the weekend, the parents were busy again. Salma planned to take the children to Grandma's. It was a beautiful day, so Asser decided to take his football.

He went to the garage to get this football. Outside the garage, he saw his dad's shovel. It was covered in mud. Asser looked around the yard. There was nothing different there, no new trees or plants. Why was the shovel so muddy ?

"That's strange," thought Asser.

Asser and Mayar went to their grandma's house every day that week. Asser was worried about the concert. He really wanted his mom and dad to go to the concert. He wanted them to hear him sing and play his guitar. Did they remember about it? They were so busy. He practiced his song a lot because he wanted the concert to go well.



Later on, Asser was playing in Grandma's yard while Mayar listened to an audiobook. Asser's friend, Shady, came by.

"Hi, Asser. I didn't know you lived here," said Shady.

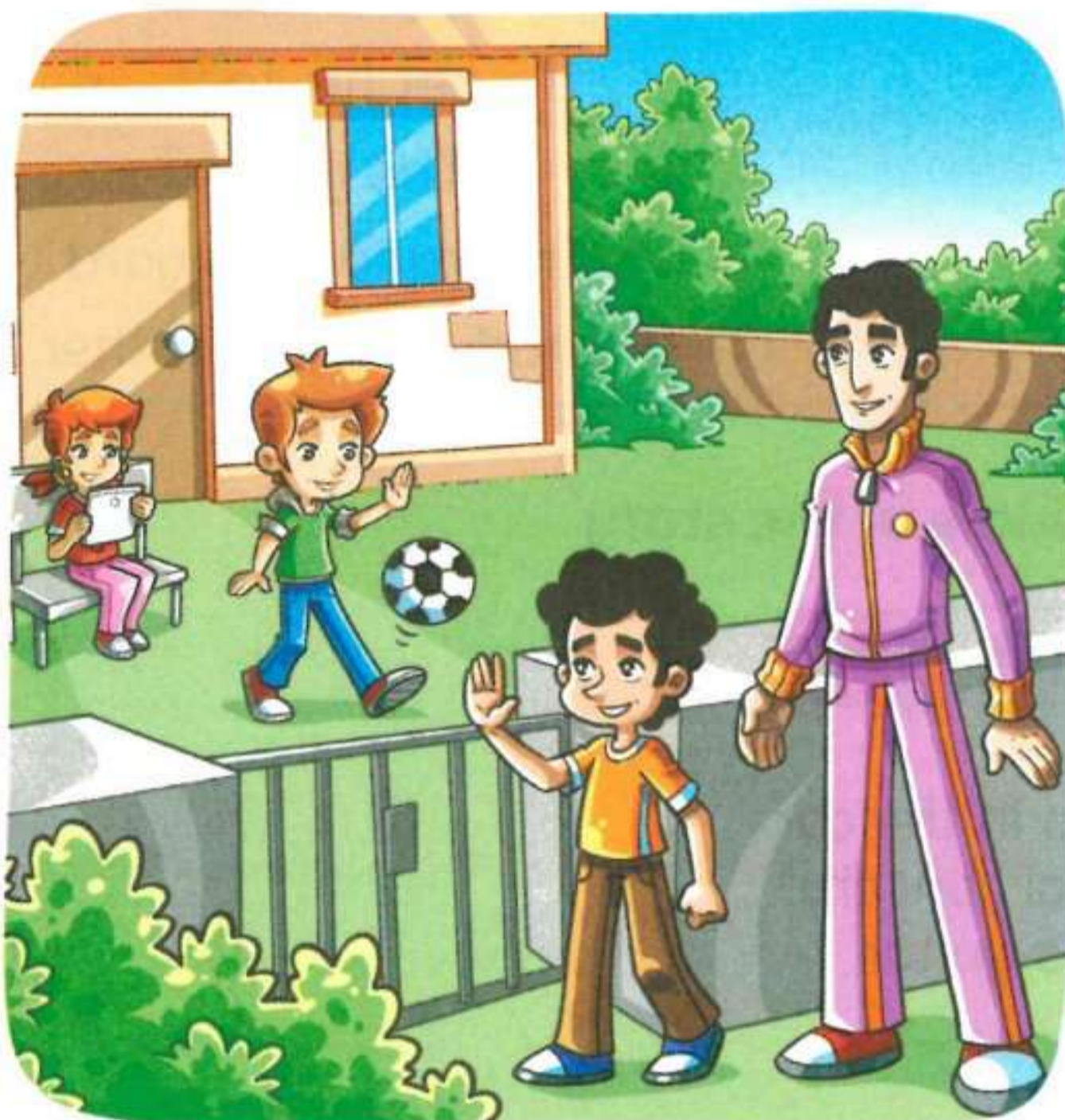
"It's my grandma's house," said Asser.

"Do you want to come to the park with me and my dad" asked Shady.

"Yes, but I'll have to ask Grandma," said Asser.

Asser went inside. "Grandma, can I go to the park with Shady and his dad, please?" he said.

"Yes, of course. Take your water bottle!" replied Grandma.



Questions & Answers

on the Middle

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح اعدت خصيصًا لتمكين الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

1. Read and write Yes or No.

Yes

1. Mayar and her mom listened to an audio book in the car.
2. Asser took his football.
3. The shovel was covered in mud.
4. Asser practiced his song a lot.
5. Asser went to the park with Shady and his dad.
6. Asser was worried about the concert.

Yes
Yes
Yes
Yes
Yes
Yes

2. Read and write Yes or No.

	No	Correction
1. Asser went to the garage to get his <u>car</u> .	No	football
2. The shovel was covered with <u>sand</u> .	No	mud
3. Mayar practiced <u>her</u> song a lot for the concert.	No	Asser - his
4. Asser was playing in <u>Grandpa's</u> yard.	No	Grandma's
5. Asser went with his <u>cousin</u> Shady to the park.	No	friend
6. Asser saw a <u>basket</u> outside the garage.	No	shovel

3. Read and answer the questions.

	Answers
1. What did Mayar listen to in the car ?	An audio book.
2. What was Asser worried about ?	His concert.
3. Why did Asser go to the garage ?	To get his football
4. What instrument did Asser play ?	The guitar.
5. Where was Asser playing football ?	In Grandma's yard.
6. Who took Asser to the park ?	Shady and his father.

General Exercises

on the middle of the story

Mini Test

1

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Mayar wanted to listen to the radio in the car. [.....]
2. Asser was thinking about his school concert. [.....]
3. Asser went to the garage to get his guitar. [.....]
4. The shovel was covered in ice. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Asser go to the garage ?
.....
2. Who invited Asser to go to the park ?
.....

Mini Test

2

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Dad planned to take the children to Grandma's house. [.....]
2. Asser went to the garage to get his basketball. [.....]
3. Asser wanted his parents to remember his concert. [.....]
4. Asser saw a basket outside the garage. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did Salma take the children on the weekend ?
.....
2. What did Asser see in the garage ?
.....

3

The End

نهاية القصة

Asser and Shady had fun in the park. When they got tired, they sat down by some thick bushes. They drank some water and ate some fruit.

They were sitting quietly when they heard people talking.

"That sounds like your mom and dad" said Shady.

Asser looked around. Shady was right. It sounded like they were near - but where ?



Asser and Shady walked around the bushes. on the other side, there was a group of people working. Asser's parents were there, digging.

Asser ran over to his parents. When his parents saw them, they looked surprised.

"Asser! What are you doing here?" asked his dad.

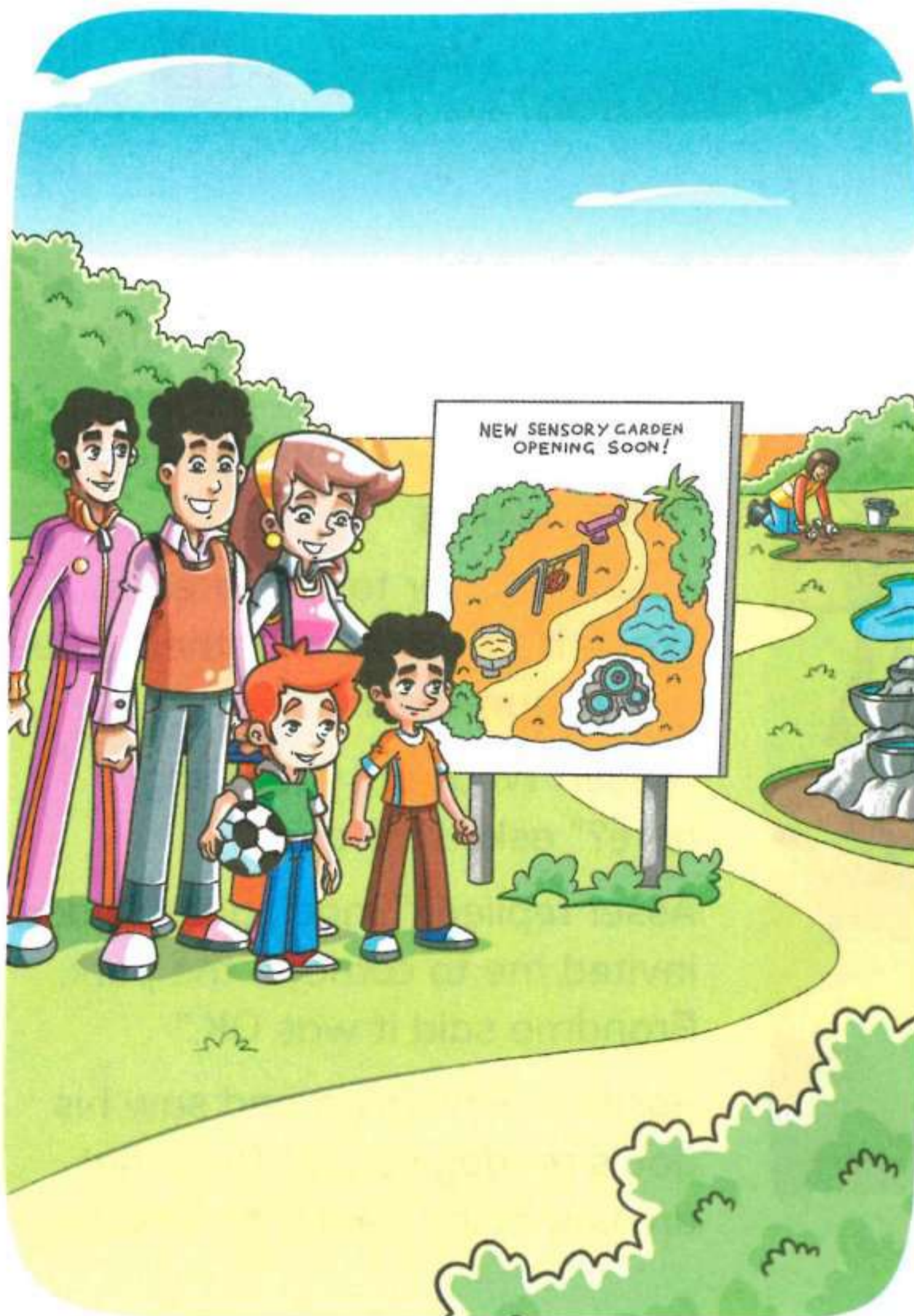
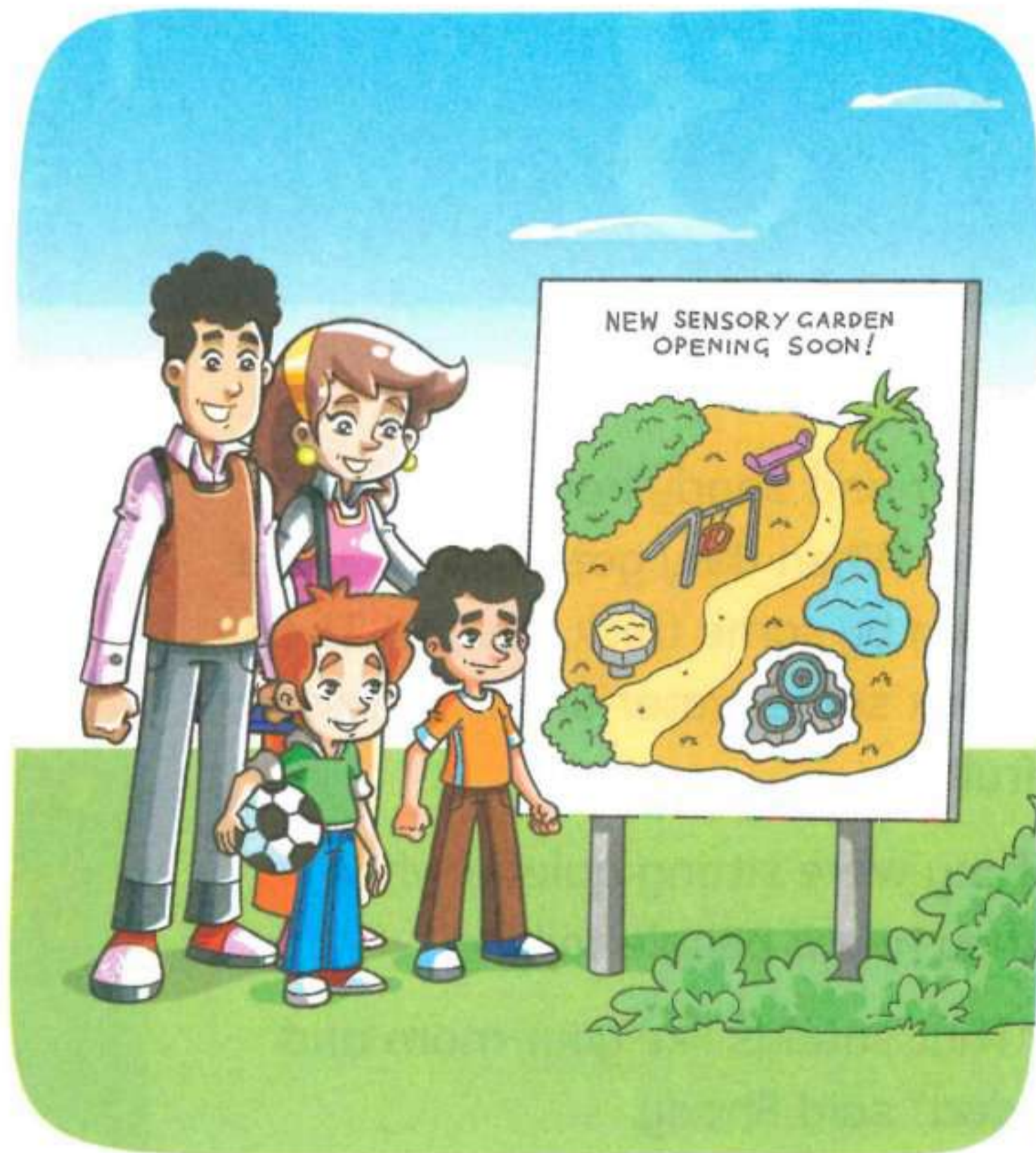
Asser replied, "Shady and his dad invited me to come to the park. Grandma said it was OK."

Asser looked down and saw his dad's muddy boots. "But what are you doing here?" he asked.

Asser's parents looked at each other and laughed. His dad put down his spade. They showed Asser and Shady a large information board with a plan on it. The plan showed lots of exciting new play equipment.

"We're making a playground with a sensory garden. It's for all the children in the neighborhood to enjoy" said Salma.

Shady's dad arrived. "Wow! This is going to be amazing," he said.



"What's a sensory garden?" asked Shady.

"A sensory garden is a place where you can hear, see, and touch all kinds of interesting things" said Asser's dad. "Mayar and a lot of other children couldn't use some of the equipment in the old playground. So, we're working with these builders to make a space that everybody can enjoy. There's a fountain, and there will be wind chimes for relaxing sounds. There will be wide paths, so it's easy for people in wheelchairs to enjoy the garden."

"We're planting flowers, too," said Asser's mom. "They will smell beautiful."

"This is awesome," said Asser. "Is this why you've been so busy?"

"Yes, it is! We didn't tell you about it because it's a surprise!" said his dad.

"I'd love to do something to help, too!" said Asser.

"Great!" said his mom. "The builders are putting in the big equipment next week, but you can help us plant the flowers".

"You can hang the wind chimes, too" said his dad.

Asser and Shady started helping. It was hard work, but the boys had fun.

"Thank you for helping!" said Asser's mom "When this opens next week, you can come and show everybody around".



The next weekend, the children's Mom said, "Mayar, we have a surprise!"

"What is it?" asked Mayar.

"We can't tell you. It's secret. Let's all go to the park," said Mayar's dad.

Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden.

"I love it here! The fountain is my favorite thing!" said Mayar.

"Thank you for helping us, Asser" said their mom, "and don't worry - we haven't forgot your concert!"

• **The moral of the story :**

- It's important to think about everyone in your community.

Questions & Answers

on the End

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح اعدت خصيصًا لتمكين الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

1. Read and write Yes or No.

Yes

- | | |
|---|-----|
| 1. Asser and Shady sat by some thick bushes. | Yes |
| 2. Asser hear his parents' voice in the park. | Yes |
| 3. Asser's parents showed him a large information board. | Yes |
| 4. Asser's parents are making a playground with a sensory garden. | Yes |
| 5. There's a fountain in the sensory garden. | Yes |
| 6. It's easy for people in wheelchair to enjoy the garden. | Yes |

★ تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط.

2. Read and write Yes or No.

No

Correction

- | | | |
|--|----|----------------|
| 1. <u>Mayar</u> and Asser helped in the sensory garden. | No | Shady |
| 2. Mayar's favorite thing is the <u>chimes</u> . | No | fountain |
| 3. Asser's parents <u>forgot</u> his concert. | No | didn't forget |
| 4. Asser's parents made a <u>theme park</u> . | No | sensory garden |
| 5. There <u>aren't</u> wind chimes for relaxing sounds. | No | are |
| 6. <u>Grandma</u> enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden. | No | Asser |

3. Read and answer the questions.

Answers

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Why didn't Asser's parents tell him about the sensory garden ? | - Because it was a surprise. |
| 2. Who invited Asser to come to the park ? | - Shady and his dad. |
| 3. What was Asser's parents surprise ? | - They were making a sensory garden. |
| 4. What is a sensory garden ? | - It's a place where you can hear, see and touch all kinds of interesting things. |
| 5. Why did Asser's parents make a sensory garden ? | - Because some children couldn't use some equipment in the old playground. |
| 6. How could Asser and Shady help in the sensory garden ? | - They planted flowers and hung the chimes. |

Mini Test 1

A Read and write Yes or No.

- 1. Asser's parents were angry when they saw him. [.....]
- 2. Asser's parents were eating in the park. [.....]
- 3. Asser saw his dad's muddy boots. [.....]
- 4. There is a fountain in the sensory garden. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

- 1. What were Asser's parents doing on the other side of the park ?
.....
- 2. How did the parents feel when Asser saw them in the park ?
.....

Mini Test 2

A Read and write Yes or No.

- 1. Asser and Shady had fun in the cinema. [.....]
- 2. The sensory garden will open next month. [.....]
- 3. Mom and Dad are making a playground with a sensory garden. [.....]
- 4. Asser's parents showed Asser and Shady a large information board. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

- 1. What did the parents show Asser ?
.....
- 2. Where did Asser and Shady sit ?
.....

General Exercises | on the story

1 El-moasser exercises تدریبات كتاب المعاصر

Mini Test 1

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Mayar has a concert next week. [.....]
2. Grandma made coffee for children. [.....]
3. Salma is Mayar's Grandma. [.....]
4. Asser saw his dad's shovel covered in mud. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why do Asser and Mayar go to Grandma's house ?
.....
2. What did the parents show Asser ?
.....

Mini Test 2

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Asser practiced his song a lot. [.....]
2. There're wind chimes in the sensory garden. [.....]
3. Grandma made a cake for children. [.....]
4. Mayar has a concert next week. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Salma plan to do on the weekend ?
.....
2. Why did Asser go to the garage ?
.....

Mini Test 3

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. The fountain is Mayar's favorite thing in the park. [.....]
2. Mayar and her mom chose a written book to listen. [.....]
3. Grandma picked Asser and Mayar because their mother was busy. [.....]
4. When Asser's parents saw him in the park, they were surprised. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. When did Mayar's parents learn braille ?

.....

2. What was wrong with the old playground ?

.....

Mini Test 4

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Mayar wanted her parents to hear her sing and play the guitar. [.....]

2. Asser's parents were making a playground with a sensory garden. [.....]

3. Asser's parents were building a sensory garden to grow vegetables. [.....]

4. Children went to Grandpa's house after school. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. What is a sensory garden ?

.....

2. Where did Asser and Shady go ?

.....

2 Previous Exams تدريبات من الامتحانات السابقة

Mini Test 5

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Mrs Azza came to talk to Grandma. [.....]

2. The parents were busy on the weekend. [.....]

3. Shady and Mayar chose an audiobook to listen. [.....]

4. Asser saw his dad's shovel outside the garage. [.....]

[Monfia - Shebin El Kom 2024]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did the parents show Asser ? [Beheria - Rosetta 2024]

.....

2. How did the parents feel when Asser saw them in the park ? [Kafr - El-Sheikh 2024]

.....

Mini Test

6

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. There will be wind chimes in the new sensory garden. [.....]
2. Shady is Asser's brother. [.....]
3. When Asser saw Grandma, he smiled and hugged her. [.....]
4. Mayar has dance classes in the evening. [.....]

[Cairo - Helwan 2024]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did Asser go to get the football ?

.....

2. Where was Grandma waiting for Asser ?

.....

[Minia - Maghagha 2024]

Mini Test

7

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. When Asser opened the car trunk, he saw clean clothes. [.....]
2. Asser's Grandma was waiting for him at the school gate. [.....]
3. Mom told Mayar to remember her guitar for pottery classes. [.....]
4. Mayar was carrying a game. [.....]

[Cairo - Al Sahel/Minya - Samalut 2024]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Asser's parents have muddy boots ?

.....

[Assiut 2024]

2. How did Asser find out his parents' secret ?

.....

[Giza - Haram 2024]

Mini Test

8

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Mrs Eman is Asser's school teacher. [.....]
2. Mayar and grandma helped to plant flowers. [.....]
3. Asser saw his dad's muddy boots. [.....]
4. There is a fountain in the sensory garden. [.....]

[Minia - Mallawi 2024 / Cairo - Al Sahel 2024]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Asser decide to ask his mom about the concert later ?

.....

[Monufia - Ashmoon 2024]

2. What did the parents show Asser and Shady ?

.....

[Ismailia 2024]



Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع
الخاصة بكتاب الشرح



Unit 1

Test 1 on Lessons 1&2

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Noha and Hesham are talking about a competition. They want to enter a creative project competition. Noha's favorite activity is painting. Hesham doesn't feel happy when he's painting. He prefers making things with his hands. His favorite activity is making pottery.

Test 2 on Lessons 3&4

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Sibelius was from Finland, a country in northern Europe. Sibelius's work is still popular today and played at concerts and in theaters all around the world. The Sibelius monument was a sculpture. It was created by the female artist Eila Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 steel pipes of different sizes in an irregular shape. It is 8.5 meters high and 10.5 meters wide.

Test 3 on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to

make a bowl. When I finished it, I gave it to my mom for her birthday. She loved it.

Test 4 on Unit 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world.

Test 5 on Unit 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Mahmoud Mukhtar was a sculptor. He was born in Egypt. He has many famous, sculptures. His sculptures are amazing.



Unit 2

Test 6 on Lessons 1&2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922. He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together.

Test 7 on Lessons 3&4

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

I think electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop! I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening, too.

Test 8 on Lessons 5,6&7

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

If you want to have a turtle as a pet, you have to know these things. Turtles like to eat flowers and plants. They need very large space for their home. They need clean soil to dig in. They sometimes need a heat lamp to keep them nice and warm.

Test 9 on Unit 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Sameh and Nadine were on school vacation at home with their parents. One morning, Sameh was in the living room, playing with his new kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small hole in the wall. Sameh put his hand through the hole to get her but all he could feel was some paper. He pulled the paper - it was a very old message. Sameh felt very curious.

Test 10 on Unit 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot. The Bill robots do all their chores. They work 24 hours a day.

Test 11 on Units 1&2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets and florists. It might be best to buy from a garden center. Assistants at the garden center can give you some useful advice about your plant. Make sure you know what your plant is called.



Unit 3

Test 12 on Lessons 1&2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

In Northern Siberia, some students have their lessons in tents on the ice and snow! Many people in the North of Siberia are nomadic. This means that they don't live in one place. They travel in sleds across the frozen land and sleep in tents. They look after reindeer and take them to where there is food.

Test 13 on Lessons 3&4

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Aya loves cooking. She started a new club. She thinks cooking club is great. Last week, they made special cookies for Eid Al-Fitr. This week, they are going to make lemon juice.

Test 14 on Lessons 5,6&7

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

I think school trips are exciting for learning experiences. We can learn a lot by visiting new places. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

Test 15 on Unit 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm 11, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers !

Test 16 on Unit 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Nebsin didn't want to get up. The sun was bright, but his bed was comfortable. Nebsin went into the kitchen. His mom was making breakfast. Nebsin's father was a scribe. Nebsin didn't know what job he wanted to do in the future.



Unit 4

Test 17 on Lessons 1 & 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My friend Hani is twelve years old. He has brown curly hair. He has brown eyes. He uses a wheelchair because he can't walk well. He is good at English. We play basketball in the school team.

Test 18 on Lessons 3&4

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Noha is my best friend. She is eleven. She lives in London with her parents. Noha favorite hobby is playing volleyball. She writes me a letter every month.

Test 19 on Lessons 5,6 & 7

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother called Ali and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family !

Test 20 on Unit 4

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

I'm Miss Rana. I want you to get into groups to make posters about animals which live in tropical rainforests. It should be an

advertisement for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting information. You can get in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget – kindness is important.

Test 21 on Unit 4

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

It is interesting that we are not the same. Everyone is different. I'm tall but Seleem is short. I have straight hair, but Yara has curly hair. Some of us are good at art, and others are good at sports.

Test 22 on Units 3&4

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

We go to school from Sunday to Friday. I have to wear a school uniform. My school uniform and shoes have to be neat. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers! School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. We have an hour for lunch. I usually bring lunch from home.

October Test

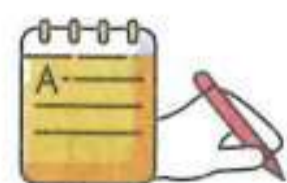
- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

It was a strange day. We had a power outage! My class and I were looking at the interactive whiteboard, when suddenly all the information disappeared.

November Test

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Nebsin didn't want to get up. The sun was bright, but his bed was comfortable. Dad told him to get up because it was time for school. Nebsin went into the kitchen and his mom was making breakfast. Nebsin's father was a scribe. Nebsin didn't know what job he wanted to do in the future.



Unit 1

Test 1 on Lessons 1 & 2

"A competition"

Next week, we will have a competition in our school. This competition will be about creative activities. I want to take part in it. There are many different activities like junk modeling, pottery and designing clothes. In this competition, we can use recycled cloth to save money and help the planet. Our work will appear in a big art exhibition in the city museum. It will be a great competition and we will enjoy it.

Test 2 on Lessons 3 & 4

"A famous sculptor"

Anish Kapoor is a famous sculptor. Kapoor is a great artist. He was born in India. He studied art in the UK. He likes to use new shapes as well as different materials. He understands maths well, and he also understands materials. He can make sculptures that will stay in a place for a long time. He uses stainless steel because it stays shiny and bad weather doesn't damage it.

Test 3 on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

"A school show"

The school show was great. I wasn't in a play. Magdy and I don't like acting. Magdy was the photographer of the school show, but my job was better than that. I helped Mr Ali make

the props. Props are the things that actors need on stage to make the play look real. If the play is about a family at home in the living room, you need some furniture. Magdy put the photos on the school website.

Test 4 on Unit 1

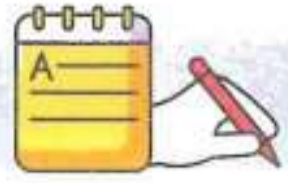
"A creative project competition"

There are so many different ways to express myself. I can enter a competition using any kind of creative work. I'm making some outdoor art for my creative project competition. I use the things I find around me. For example, I use leaves to make some outdoor art. When it's windy, the leaves and flowers in my art move. The back of the school playground is better to make the art. When it rains, outdoor art looks terrible! I decided to put big cloth over it until the rain stops.

Test 5 on Unit 1 "Creative activities"

"Creative activities"

There are lots of creative activities we can do. You can try junk modeling to build a rocket, a ship or a house. You can use clay to make beautiful pottery. You can make beautiful collage with material, paint and colored paper. If you have a computer, you can make an animation. All these skills show how creative you are.



Unit 2

Test 6 on Lessons 1 & 2

From mahdy 22@gmail.com
To essam@yahoo.com
Subject My bedroom

Dear Essam,

We moved into a new apartment last month. I'm happy because I have a new room. My new room is large, light and more comfortable. I share it with my brother, Hassan. We are always good friends. We have a long desk for PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. When we finish our homework, we can play computer games in our room. We watch cartoons with our friends, too.

Test 7 on Lessons 3 & 4

"Why is electricity important?"

In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop. I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening. It's also important in the kitchen. We couldn't use our electric kettle without electricity or our blender or our refrigerator.

Test 8 on Lessons 5,6 & 7

"The special house"

Our house is special. It's a very old house in Giza. I live in it with my parents, brothers and my sister. It was built from bricks and stone in the 1950s.

My great grandmother lived here with my mom, dad, and five brothers and sisters. We have a spare room. In the spare room, we found some old boxes. The house has changed. The walls are a different color.

Test 9 on Unit 2

"Caring for your cat"

Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe. You should move your hand over its back, or under its chin. Cats love this! They like a warm, comfortable bed. Don't wake it up - cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day! They like small meals at different times in the day. If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new furry friend in your life!

Test 10 on Unit 2

"The chores you and your family do every weekend"

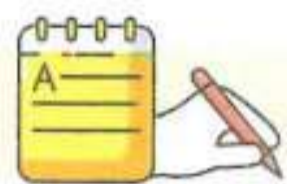
We do a lot of chores in our house. Every weekend, we help each other to keep our house clean and tidy. I mop up the water. My sister picks up the books and washes the dishes. My mom cooks lunch and tidies up the living room. My dad hangs up the clothes. My brother puts out the garbage. After a long day, we rest and have fun together.

Test 11 on Units 1 & 2

"My bedroom"

We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom! I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends.

We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV!



Unit 3

Test 12 on Lessons 1 & 2

"Your school week"

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school.

We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

Test 13 on Lessons 3 & 4

"Green City School"

At Green City School, we care about helping the environment. We use solar panels to make electricity. We recycle a lot of paper and plastic. There is also a demonstration about sorting waste. We have an open day for new students and their families to learn about all our activities.

Test 14 on Lessons 5 , 6 & 7

"Your opinion about school trips"

I think school trips are exciting learning experiences. We can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

Test 15 on Unit 3

From	hatem90@yahoo.com
To	saleem11@yahoo.com
Subject	School clubs

Dear Saleem,

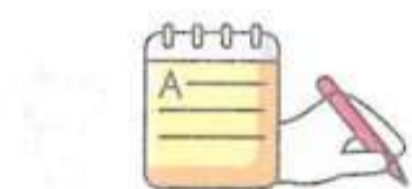
How are things? Let me tell you about our school club. Today we practiced inside for the first half hour. First, we had to run up and down the playground 20 times. Then we climbed a rope. That was really difficult. After that, we ran a 400 - meter race outside. I love running, but it makes me very tired. After that, we played a game for 15 minutes. It was great. My team won! Join our club to learn a new skill and meet new people!

Yours,
Hatem

Test 16 on Unit 3

"Your school"

We go to school from Sunday to Friday. I have to wear a school uniform. My school uniform and shoes have to be neat. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers! School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I study science in the laboratory. The playground is very big. We have an hour for lunch. I usually bring lunch from home.



Unit 4

Test 17 on Lessons 1 & 2

"We're all different"

If we were all the same, life would be boring. In my class, Asser is different to his friends because he's tall and he has brown eyes. He's good at science, but his friend Seleem is good at geography. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is straight and he wears glasses. Injy has curly hair and wears braces to help her teeth get straight. The important thing is that we look after each other. People shouldn't be unkind to each other because they're different.

Test 18 on Lessons 3 & 4

"Working together on a poster"

We got into groups to make a poster about rainforest animals. We made a

colorful poster with lots of interesting information. While we were working, we showed kindness because it was very important. We also worked together. My friend Fares collected the pictures. Amira wrote the words. We were very happy after finishing the poster.

Test 19 on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

"A short story you have read"

This short story is about a boy called Adam. He has a problem with his leg. He uses a wheelchair. He plays wheelchair basketball. He is very clever and talented. Last week, his team was playing the final match. They were about to lose the final. During the last minute, Adam scored three points for his team, so they won the game.

Test 20 on Unit 4

"A personal profile"

Hi everybody!

I'm Malek and I'm eleven. I live in Cairo and I go to El Salam School. I'm in grade 6. My best friends at school are Omar and Ali. We're in the same class. I have short dark hair and I wear glasses. I have a brother, Anas, and a sister, Malak. I'm really into sports. I love watching football games on TV with my dad. On the weekend, I often meet my friends in the park to play basketball. Omar records the most points, so everybody wants him to be in their team. I want to be an engineer. Write and tell me about yourself.

Test 21 on Unit 4

"A short description of a friend"

Tom is my best friend. He is 12 years old. He is from England. He is English. He is tall and wears glasses. He has short brown hair. He has got big green eyes. He can play football, but he can't play tennis. He loves reading and always has a book in his hand. His favorite color is yellow. His favorite food is pizza. He also likes pets. He has got a small puppy. He is friendly and nice. He is always happy.

Test 22 on Units 3 & 4

"Studying the past"

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. I think, we can learn a lot by studying the past. History helps us understand our society and other countries. Some people say that the present is more interesting than the past, but I don't agree. History is interesting and exciting. It is full of great stories and interesting people. Finally, history helps us learn from past mistakes so that we don't repeat the same mistakes in the future.

October Test

"A pet"

Pets are animals that live in our homes. They are not dangerous. Pets need many things to live happily. They need good food and water. They should have enough sleep. Cats sleep most of the day. You should take your pet to the vet every month. Vets check their health and give them the vaccine. Pets help us to be calm and happy. They also are good for our mood.

November Test

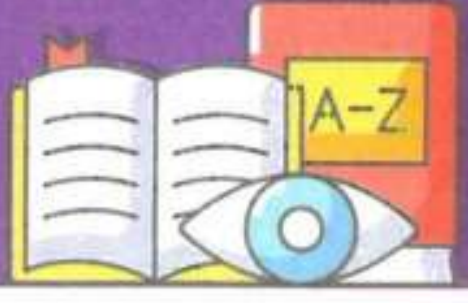
From	malek@gmail.com
To	anas@gmail.com
Subject	Green roofs

Dear Anas,

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school ! The Shagara at school project designs gardens and green roofs for the school in Egypt. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They are great for the environment. This project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden.

Yours,

Malek



Translation of Listening & Reading Texts

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع
والقراءة لكتاب الشرح



Unit 1

Lesson 1. Show your creativity

شارك في مسابقتنا الجديدة الممتعة وأظهر لنا مدى إبداعك! نريد من الأطفال الذين تتراوح أعمارهم بين الخامسة والخامسة عشر أن يرسلوا لنا أعمالهم الإبداعية. سيتم عرض عملك في معرض فني كبير في متحف المدينة.

هناك العديد من الطرق المختلفة التي يمكنك من خلالها التعبير عن نفسك. يمكنك أن ترسل لنا لوحة أو صورة أو قصيدة أو قصة. أو لما لا تجرب شيئاً جديداً؟ إليك بعض الأفكار لأنشطة إبداعية مختلفة ستجعلك متحمساً!

تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة

ماذا يمكنك أن تصنع بصندوق الورق المقوى؟

الزجاجات والأغطية البلاستيكية - جرب تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة! استخدم مهاراتك الإبداعية ومهاراتك في التصميم لبناء صاروخ أو سفينة أو سيارة أو منزل.

فن صناعة الأواني الفخارية

هل تحب أن تتسخ يداك [بالصلصال]؟ إذن قم بتجربة صناعة الأواني الفخارية! استخدم الصلصال لصنع وعاء أو كوب أو زهرية. تصميم الملابس

إذا لم تتمكن من العثور على أي شيء تريد ارتدائه، ماذا عن تصميم وصنع ملابسك الخاصة؟ يمكنك استخدام القماش المعاد تدويره لتوفير المال ومساعدة الكوكب.

صناعة الأعمال الفنية من الملصقات

إذا لم تتمكن من تحديد ما ستستخدمه في مشروعك، فاستخدم القليل من كل شيء! يمكنك إنشاء مجموعة جميلة من الأعمال من الملصقات باستخدام المواد الخام والطلاء والورق الملون.

صناعة المجوهرات

إستخدم حبات الخرز لصناعة مجوهرات جميلة، على سبيل المثال، القلائد أو الأساور.

فن النحت

يمكنك استخدام الخشب أو الصلصال أو الحجر لعمل تماثيل لحيوان أو شخص أو شكل جديد تمامًا.

الفن الخارجي

إستخدم الأشياء التي تجدها حولك في العالم الخارجي، على سبيل المثال، أوراق الشجر أو الأصداف لعمل بعض الأعمال الفنية الخارجية.

الرسوم المتحركة الحاسوبية

إذا كنت تفضل استخدام التكنولوجيا، فيمكنك استخدام مهاراتك في الحاسوب لإنشاء رسوم متحركة. يمكن أن تحكي الصور

المتحركة قصة رائعة!

هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكنك القيام بها! كيف تحب التعبير عن نفسك؟

Lesson 2

نهى : هل سمعت عن هذه المسابقة يا هشام؟ إنها لأي نوع من المشاريع الإبداعية. أود الاشتراك فيها.

هشام : أوه واو، هذا يبدو جيدًا. ما الذي ستقدميه؟

نهى : لا أعرف، نشاطي المفضل هو الرسم أشعر بالسعادة دائمًا عندما أرسم. إذا كنت حزين، أرسم. عندها أشعر بالتحسن. هشام : حسناً، إذا قمت بالرسم، فأنا لا أشعر بالسعادة. فأنا لست جيدًا في ذلك! ...

نهى : نعم، أنت على حق! على أية حال، لا يوجد أحد سيء في مشروع إبداعي، يمكنك أن تفعل أو تصنع أي شيء تريده. ليس هناك صواب أو خطأ! ...

هشام : أفضل صنع الأشياء بيدي. أحب النحت أو تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة، لكن المفضل لدى هو صناعة الأواني الفخارية. أعتقد أنها تبحث عن الراحة.

نهى : أوه، أنا لا أوافق على ذلك. أنا لا أحب صناعة الأواني

الفخارية لأنني لا أحب أن أجعل يداي متسخة. أعتقد أنه من غير المريح حقاً أن يكون هناك طين على يدي.

هشام : ولكن إذا كنت ترسمين، فإنك ستجدين ألوان على يديك. نهى : حسناً، نعم، أعتقد أنك على حق. ولحسن الحظ، تختفي الألوان بسرعة عندما أقوم بغسلها.

Lesson 4. Anish Kapoor's sculptures

أنيش كابور نحات. ولد كابور في الهند عام ١٩٥٤ وأنتقل إلى لندن بالمملكة المتحدة لدراسة الفن عام ١٩٧٣. يحب استخدام الأشكال الجديدة والمثيرة للاهتمام بالإضافة إلى المواد المختلفة. يصنع كابور قطعاً فنية كبيرة جداً للأماكن العامة ويمكن للناس رؤية فنه في جميع أنحاء العالم.

مجسم الشجرة طويلة القامة والعين هي أحد المنحوتات الشهيرة لأنيش كابور، وهي تقع خارج متحف غوغنهايم في بلباو، إسبانيا. يبلغ طول هذا التمثال حوالي ١٣ متراً وهو مصنوع من ٧٣ كرة من الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ....

الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ لامع جداً، لذلك عندما تنظر إلى مجسم الشجرة الطويلة والعين، يمكنك رؤية وجهك عدة مرات. ثم ترتيب الكرة بنمط غير منتظم. وهذا يجعلها تبدو مثل الفقاعات وهي تطفو! ...

كابور فنان عظيم فهو يفهم الرياضيات جيداً، ويفهم أيضاً المواد الخام. وهذا يعني أنه يستطيع صناعة المنحوتات التي ستبقى في مكانها لفترة طويلة. على سبيل المثال في مجسم الشجرة طويلة القامة والعين استخدم كابور الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ لأنه مادة قوية جداً. وهو جيد جداً للمنحوتات الخارجية لأنه يظل لامعاً، ولا يؤدي الطقس السيء إلى إتلافه.

على مر السنين، صنع كابور العديد من المنحوتات الشهيرة الأخرى. تمثال كابور الشهير الآخر هو "بوابة السحاب" يمكنك رؤيته في شيكاغو، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية.

بوابة السحاب "عالية جداً، ويمكن للأشخاص التمشية أسفل منها! كما أنها مصنوعة من الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ، مما يعكس السماء والمباني والأشخاص من حولها، مثل مرآة ضخمة. إنه معلم مشهور جداً للزيارة في شيكاغو.

بني نصب سبيليوس التذكاري عام ١٩٦٧ تخليدًا للموسيقار الشهير جان سبيليوس الذي توفي عام ١٩٥٧.

كان سبيليوس من فنلندا، وهي دولة تقع في شمال أوروبا. لا تزال أعمال سبيليوس تحظى بشعبية حتى يومنا هذا ويتم عرضها في الحفلات الموسيقية والمسارح في جميع أنحاء العالم. التمثال من صنع هيلتونن وهي أيضًا فنانة من فنلندا.

يتكون التمثال من ٦٠٠ أنبوب فولاذي بأحجام مختلفة في شكل غير منتظم. يبلغ ارتفاعه ٨,٥ مترًا وعرضه ١٠,٥ مترًا. أرادت هيلتونن أن يبدو شكل التمثال مثل صوت موسيقى سبيليوس يمكنك أن ترى التمثال في حديقة سبيليس في هلنكسي، عاصمة فنلندا.

Lesson 5.

المحاور : واو يمازن! الحفل كان مذهلاً! أنت موهوب جدًا!
مازن : شكرًا جزيلًا! لقد أحببته، ولكنني أشعر بالتعب دائمًا بعد الحفل!

المحاور : أنا لست مندهشًا. لقد عزفت على الجيتار وقمت بالغناء لأكثر من ساعة!

مازن : لقد مر الأمر بسرعة كبيرة. لكن لم يكن أحد يعلم بالمشكلة التي واجهتني قبل الحفل!

المحاور : مشكلة - ماذا كانت هذه المشكلة؟

مازن : لم أتمكن من العثور على الجيتار الخاص بي! كنت أتدرب في غرفة مختلفة هذا الصباح ووضعت الجيتار الخاص بي في مكان ما. وبعد ذلك نسيت أين وضعته. لقد بحثت عنه في كل مكان، حتى تحت جميع الكراسي ولكنني لم أتمكن من العثور عليه! قبل خمس دقائق من الحفل، دخلت صديقتي الغرفة. لقد عثرت عليه خلف الباب. لقد كنت محظوظًا جدًا.

Lesson 7. Behind the camera

لقد مر أسبوعان على العرض المدرسي، وكان الجميع متحمسين. الجميع باستثناء مجدي.

قال وليد : "سوف أعزف على البيانو" وقالت نسمة : الكورال سوف يغني أغاني جميلة"

وقالت داليا : "وسأقوم بتصميم أزياء للكورال"

قال سمير : "لقد كتبت مسرحية مضحكة! كان مجدي قلقًا،

فهو لا يذهب إلى دروس العزف على البيانو، ولا يحب الغناء وفكر قائلاً : "ماذا سأفعل؟" وفي طريق العودة إلى المنزل، مر مجدي أمام المتحف. وكان هناك إعلان لمعرض للصور الفوتوغرافية. وتعرض صورة بالأبيض والأسود لرجلاً يعزف البيانو على المسرح. ومعه الجمهور في الظل. وفكر مجدي قائلاً : هذا مذهل! وشعر وكأنه هناك، يستمع إلى الموسيقى.

في المنزل بدأ مجدي يبحث في الخزائن : سألت الأم : "ماذا تفعل؟" سأل مجدي : "أبي لديه كاميرا جيدة، أليس كذلك؟ هل تعرفين أين هي؟"

ردت الأم قائلة : "نعم" وهي تأخذ صندوقًا من أحد الرفوف. لم تستخدمه منذ فترة طويلة.

سألت الأم قائلة : هل تدرسون التصوير الفوتوغرافي في المدرسة؟ قال مجدي : "لا، لكنني سأتعلم!" وجد مجدي كتب التصوير الفوتوغرافية الخاصة بوالده وقرأ عن الأزرار المختلفة الموجودة في الكاميرا. ثم تعلم كيفية تحرير الصور على الحاسوب لجعلها أفتح أو أغمق.

كان مجدي متحمسًا. في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، اصطحبه والده وأمه إلى معرض للصور الفوتوغرافية وبعد المعرض ذهبوا إلى المدينة وقام مجدي بالتقاط صورًا للأشياء التي رآها. وأخيرًا تحدث مجدي مع معلمته قائلاً : "بأستاذة سلوى، أنا قلق. أنا لا أحب أن أكون على خشبة المسرح. لا أحب الغناء أو التمثيل، ولا أستطيع العزف على آلة موسيقية.

قالت معلمته : "مجدي، هذه فرصة لك للقيام بشيء تستمتع به، وللتعبير عن نفسك. هل يمكنك التفكير في شيء ما؟"

قال مجدي : "أعلم! يمكنني أن أكون المصور!"

يمكنني أن أكون على خشبة المسرح أثناء أداء الفصل العرض. ثم بعد ذلك، يمكنني تعديل الصور لموقع مدرستنا الإلكتروني."

ابتسمت الأستاذة سلوى وقالت : أحسنت يا مجدي. هذه فكرة رائعة! "تدرب الفصل على آلتهم الموسيقية وتعلموا نصوصهم. وفي مساء العرض، كانوا سعداء ومستعدين للأداء. وعندما صعد كل شخص على خشبة المسرح، التقط مجدي الصور.

عرضت صور مجدي على موقع المدرسة في الأسبوع التالي. "قال والده : "سوف تصبح مصورًا رائعًا يا مجدي."

كان ذلك في اليوم التالي للعرض المدرسي. كان سمير، صديق مجدي، يزور جدته.

قال سمير : "مرحبًا يا جدتي. لقد جئت لزيارتك."

قالت الجدة : "مرحبًا يا سمير، كيف كان العرض المدرسي؟ هل كنت في مسرحية؟"

قال سمير بحماس : "كان رائعًا يا جدتي، لكنني لم أكن في المسرحية. أنا ومجدي لا نحب التمثيل.

كان مجدي هو المصور للعرض المدرسي ولكن وظيفتي كانت أفضل من ذلك. لقد ساعدت الأستاذ إبراهيم في صنع الدعائم [الديكور ...]، قال سمير بحماس.

سألت الجدة : ما هي الدعائم؟ قال سمير : الدعائم هي الأشياء التي يحتاجها الممثلون على خشبة المسرح لأداء المسرحية بشكل واقعي. "إذا كانت المسرحية تدور حول عائلة في المنزل في غرفة الجلوس، فأنت بحاجة إلى بعض الأثاث مثل الأريكة أو مصباح أو بعض الصور على الحائط. وفي بعض الأحيان تحصل على الأشياء التي نحتاجها من الوالدين ولكن في بعض الأحيان نصنعها!" قالت الجدة وهي تبدو مندهشة : "أنتم تصنعونها؟"

وضح سمير قائلاً : "نعم، أحب صنع الأشياء يا جدتي. نستخدم الخشب والورق المقوي والورق الملون ... أي شيء! استاذي السيد إبراهيم جيد جدًا في صنع الأشياء وأوضح لي ما يجب أن أفعله. قالت الجدة : "هذا يبدو مثيرًا يا سمير". أود أن أرى بعض الأشياء التي صنعتها."

قال سمير : "هذا سهل". "وضع مجدي صورته على موقع المدرسة. سأحضر هاتفى وسأعرضها لك!"



Unit 2

Lesson 1. My fantastic bedroom by Seleem

انتقلنا إلى شقة جديدة منذ شهر، وأنا سعيد جدًا لأن لدي غرفة نوم جديدة!

أحب غرفتي الجديدة. إنها غرفة خفيفة ومريحة للغاية.

أشاركها مع أخي ماجد ونحن أصدقاء جيدين.

لدينا مكتب طويل لأجهزة الحاسوب الخاصة بنا حتى نتمكن من

أداء واجباتنا المدرسية في غرفة نومنا. وهذا أفضل بكثير من القيام بذلك في غرفة المعيشة! هناك الكثير من الضوضاء الصادرة من أختنا الصغيرة والتلفاز!

عندما ننهي من واجباتنا المدرسية، يمكننا أن نلعب ألعاب الحاسوب مع أصدقائنا - وهذا أمر ممتع للغاية! لعبتي المفضلة هي لعبة إقامة المباني. نشاهد أيضًا الرسوم المتحركة مع أصدقائنا.

أنا أيضًا أحب تبادل الكتب المصورة، وأحب قراءتها في الفراش. أنا وأصدقائي نتبادلها مرة واحدة في الأسبوع ونتحدث عنها. أنا اتعلم العزف على الكمان في الوقت الحالي، وأتدرب كثيرًا. أنا لست جيدًا بعد، لذلك أحيانًا يشعر أخي بالملل من أدائي الموسيقي، خاصة عندما يكون متعبًا! إنه رياضي جدًا ويلعب الكرة الطائرة كثيرًا، لذلك فهو يقوم بتمارين الضغط في غرفتنا - وغالبًا ما يؤدي ٣٠ تمرينًا في المساء.

أنا وماجد لدينا العديد من نفس الأصدقاء. إنهم جميعًا رائعين. قبل أن ننتقل، كنا نتحدث معهم عبر الانترنت فقط، ولكن من الأفضل الآن أن يكون لدينا غرفة نوم أكبر. لقد جاؤوا إلي منزلنا للتحدث في غرفتنا.

أحد أصدقائنا شريف، لاعب شطرنج رائع. كلانا يلعب الشطرنج في نادي الشطرنج بالمدرسة. الشطرنج صعب جدًا بالنسبة لي، لكن، لحسن الحظ، شريف يساعدني.

أنا وماجد نحب الألعاب اللوحية. نلعبها مع أصدقائنا في غرفة نومنا ومع عائلتنا في غرفة المعيشة!

غرفة نوم أبي وأمي بجوار غرفتنا. غرفة نومهم بنفس حجم غرفتنا، لكن لديهم حمام خاص بهم. أنا أفضل غرفة نومنا - الشيء المفضل لدي هو أن لدينا مساحة لهواياتنا ولأصدقائنا.

Lesson 2. Amazing appliances

١. أعتقد أن الخلاط هو أفضل جهاز مطبخ! إذا كان الجو حار غدًا. سوف أصنع عصيرًا بالفواكه والثلج.
٢. استخدمه لصنع مشروب اللبن المخفوق مع أمي. تستخدمه أمي أيضًا لصنع الحساء اللذيذ.
٣. هل تعلم أن رجلًا أمريكيًا بولنديًا يدعي ستفن بوبلافسكي اخترع الخلاط عام ١٩٢٢؟ قام بوضع شفرة حادة في قاع كوب طويل. عندما تدور الشفرة، يقوم بتقطيع الطعام. وأضاف محركًا صغيرًا. قام المحرك بادارة الشفرة، مما أدى إلي مزج الطعام معًا. واستخدم اختراعه الجديد في صنع مشروب اللبن المخفوق.
٤. الخلاطات أيضًا مفيدة جدًا في الطب. علي سبيل المثال، كان الدكتور جوناس سالك عالمًا مشهورًا. في عام ١٩٥٣، استخدم الخلاط لصنع لقاح. وقد أنقذ لقاحه ملايين الأرواح. لن يمرض الناس إذا كان لديهم لقاح.
٥. في الوقت الحاضر، يختلف الخلاط قليلًا عن العشرينات، فهناك خلاطات مصنوعة من البلاستيك والزجاج والمعدن. وبعض الخلاطات يمكنها تسخين الطعام أيضًا! هل لديك خلاط في المنزل؟ هل تستخدم الخلاط كثيرًا أم قليلًا؟ ماذا ستفعل بدون الخلاط الخاص بك في المطبخ؟

Lesson 3

- الأم: أهلا مريم، كيف كان يومك؟
مريم: أوه، مرحبًا أمي! لقد كان يومًا غريبًا، في الواقع. لقد أنقطع التيار الكهربائي! كنت أنا وفصلي ننظر إلي السبورة التفاعلية، عندما اختفت فجأة جميع المعلومات.
الأم: حقًا؟ هذا غريب! ماذا فعلت الأستاذة أميرة؟

مريم: حسنًا؟ هي البداية حصلت علي وصلة كهربائية وجربت مقبس طاقة مختلفًا، لكن ذلك لم يكن يعمل أيضًا.

الأم: أوه لا! إذن، لم يكن هناك كهرباء! ماذا حدث؟
مريم: لم تتمكن من أداء الدرس الذي خطت له الأستاذة أميرة. لذلك طلبت منا جميعًا أن نجلس في دائرة ونتحدث عن أهمية الكهرباء في حياتنا.

الأم: دعيني أظن - الجميع يعتقد أنها مهمة لألعاب الحاسوب!
مريم: ههه ههه! في الواقع لا. كان لدينا جميعًا الكثير من الأفكار المختلفة. لقد كانت مناقشة مثيرة للاهتمام حقًا.

ضحى: في رأيي، الكهرباء هي الأكثر فائدة في أوقات فراغنا. أنا أحب حاسوبي! حيث أقوم بعمل واجبي المنزلي عليه! ثم ألعب ألعاب الفيديو مع أخي أحب أيضًا مشاهدة التلفاز مع جدي في المساء.

خالد: أعرف ما تقصدينه، لكن أعتقد أن الكهرباء هي الأهم للإضاءة. أنا لا أحب الظلام، ونحتاج إلي أضواء في المساء.
سلمي: لا أوافق. أعتقد أن الأمر أكثر أهمية في المطبخ. لا يمكننا استخدام أجهزة الغلاية الكهربائية الخاصة بنا بدون كهرباء، أو الخلاطات أو الثلاجات الخاصة بنا!

تميم: ماذا عن المواصلات؟ بعض الناس يمتلكون سيارات كهربائية، كما تحتاج محطات الحافلات والمطارات إلي الكهرباء، أيضًا.

Lesson 4. The Day the Bills broke down!

إنه عام ٢٠٨٩ والحياة علي كوكب الأرض جميلة! يعيش البشر حياة سهلة لأن كل عائلة لديها بيل روبوت الذي يعمل ٢٤ ساعة يوميًا لأجلهم. يقوم بيل روبوت بكل مهامهم المنزلية. ولكن في هذا اليوم منذ عام مضي حدث شيء رديء. بدأ اليوم بشكل طبيعي.

في استراليا بعض أجهزة بيل روبوت كانت تكوي الملابس لاصحابها ليذهبوا للعمل. في ايطاليا بعض أجهزة بيل روبوت كانت تصنع مخفوق الحليب بهدوء وأخري كانت تصلح السيارات. في مصر. كانت أجهزة بيل روبوت تصنع الكشري للغداء اليوم التالي. ولكن فجأة توقف صوت هذه الأجهزة حول العالم. كل أجهزة بيل روبوت تعطلت. وسقطوا علي الأرض وانقطعت الاضاءة التي بداخلهم. شعرت عائلة في الأسكندرية بالصدمة، عندما رأت جهاز بيل روبوت الذي يملكونه ملقى علي أرضية المطبخ. حاولوا ايقاظه. قالت الأم: "بيل! ماذا حدث؟ نحن ننتظر الكشري!" لكن لم يتحدث بيل. بدأ الابن الأصغر هشام في البكاء وقال "أحتاج إلي زي مدرسي نظيف غدًا."

"ومن سوف يكوي البنطلون المدرسي لي" قال الأب "هذا امر سيء جدًا! لقد برمجت بيل ليصلح سيارتي ويغير بطارية السيارة. قال الأب "ماذا سوف أفعل الآن؟"

كان الجميع يبدو قلق جدًا، لكن الابنة فريدة قالت "سوف نقوم ببعض المهام المنزلية بأنفسنا مثلما كانوا يصنعون ذلك في الماضي. سوف نبحث علي الانترنت. ونجد كيف نصنع ذلك. هذا هو ما أخبرني به جدي الأكبر أن الناس أعتادوا علي القيام به. بدأت العائلة في محاولة تعلم أشياء من الفيديوهات.

لقد تعلموا كيفية استخدام الخلاط وصنعوا مخفوق الحليب. تعلمت الأم كيفية استخدام المايكرويف ليتمكنوا من تسخين بعض الطعام. لم يحبوا هذا كثيرًا لأنهم أعتادوا أن يصنع بيل الوجبات للعائلة. حاول الأب تعلم كيفية إصلاح سيارته لكن كان الأمر صعبًا. حاول الأب تعلم كيفية إصلاح سيارته لكن كان الأمر صعبًا. ولم يفهم كيفية تغيير بطارية السيارة علي الاطلاق. كان الأمر معقد جدًا. أدى هشام بشكل جيد. لقد تعلم هشام بسرعة كيف يكوي ملابسه المدرسية بنفسه!

من حسن الحظ قام مهندس كمبيوتر بحل المشكلة اليوم التالي وبدأت كل أجهزة بيل في مصر بالانشغال في تنظيف السيارة وجاهزة للعمل يوم الأحد. أصبحت الحياة طبيعية مرة أخرى. علي الرغم من ذلك البشر الآن مستعدين في حالة أن تعطلت أجهزة بيل مرة أخرى يوقاً ما.

Lesson 6. Caring for your cat

- كيف يمكنني أن أجعل قطي تشعر بالراحة في المنزل؟
- قدم الكثير من الاهتمام لها لتشعر بالأمان. يجب عليك أن تلاطفها، بمعنى أنك تحرك يدك علي ظهرها أو أسفل الذقن. تحب القط ذلك!
- أين تحب القطط النوم؟
- تحب القطط النوم في سرير دافئ ومريح لكن أحياناً تنام علي الكنبه فقط! لا تيقظها. فهم يحتاجون للنوم حوالي 15 ساعة كل يوم!
- ماذا تأكل القطط؟
- تأكل القطط وجبات صغيرة في أوقات مختلفة من اليوم لا يجب أن تقدم لها الكثير من اللبن لتشربه. اللبن ضار لهم. الماء أفضل من اللبن.
- ما المعدات التي تحتاجها القطط؟
- تحتاج القطط إلي عمود خدش. وهو عبارة عن عمود خشب قوي يمكن أن تشد القطط مخالباها عليها.
- أيضاً تحب القطط الألعاب لتلعب بها. من الأفكار الجيدة أن تضع طوق عليها اسم وعنوان القط حول عنقها. حتي إذا ضلت القطه الطريق سيتمكن أي شخص من أن يعيدها لك للمنزل.
- كم مرة يجب أن تذهب القطط للطبيب البيطري؟
- يجب أن تذهب القطط للطبيب البيطري مرة سنوياً للتطعيمات. هذا يحافظ عليها من الاصابة بالأمراض. إذا اعتنيت بقطتك بشكل جيد سيكون لديك صديق مغطي بالفراء في حياتك.

Caring for your turtle.

- أ. تحب السلاحف تناول الزهور والنباتات. يمكن أيضاً أن تشتري لها الطعام الخاص بالسلاحف.
- ب. تحتاج منازل السلاحف إلي مكان كبير جداً. تحتاج السلاحف الأكبر حجماً لمساحات أكبر. تحتاج السلاحف الي تربة نظيفة لتحفر بها أيضاً.
- ج. أحياناً تحتاج السلاحف إلي مصباح للتدفئة. هذا عبارة عن إضاءة خاصة لتحافظ علي بقاء السلاحف لطيفة ودافئة.
- د. تحب السلاحف النوم في مكان آمن ومظلم حيث لا تتغير درجة الحرارة.

Caring for your indoor plants

- أين يمكنني أن أشتري نبات يعيش داخل المنزل؟
- يمكنك شراء النباتات التي تعيش داخل المنزل من السوبر ماركت ومحل الزهور ومراكز الحدائق. هؤلاء هم محلات تبيع العديد من النباتات. ربما من الأفضل أن تشتري من مركز الحديقة لأن البائعين هناك يعرفون كيفية الاعتناء بالنباتات ويستطيعوا أن يقدموا لك نصائح مفيدة. تأكد أنك تعرف اسم نوع نباتك لتستطيع معرفة المزيد عنه.
- أين يجب أن أضع النباتات التي تعيش في المنزل؟
- بعض النباتات تحتاج أن تكون في مكان دافئ ومشمس به الكثير من أشعة الشمس بينما تفضل نباتات أخرى مكان بارد قليلاً ليس مشمس. ابحث علي الانترنت لتعرف أفضل مكان لنباتك. معظم النباتات لا تحب أن تحركها. لذلك قم بإيجاد أفضل مكان واطرکها هناك.
- هل تحتاج النباتات للطعام؟
- نعم! أفضل وقت هو في فصل الربيع والصيف.

قم بإطعامها بالأسمدة. السماد هو طعام مميز للنباتات. اقرأ التعليمات بحذر لأن الكثير من الأسمدة يمكن أن يكون ضار بالنبات.

- كم مرة يجب أن أسقي النبات؟
- بعض النباتات لا تحتاج الكثير من المياه بينما تحتاج أخرى لمياه أكثر. يمكنك البحث علي الانترنت للحصول علي معلومات أكثر. إذا لم تكن تعرف. من الأفضل أن تعطي النبات القليل جداً من المياه وليس الكثير جداً من المياه.
- كم مرة يجب أن أنظف النباتات التي تعيش داخل المنزل؟
- استخدم فرشاة ناعمة أو قطعة قماش قطنية لتزيل الغبار من أوراق النبات. مما يعني أنك تنظف القاذورات الجافة من الأوراق. قم برش النباتات ذات الأوراق السميكة بالمياه فذلك سيحافظ عليهم بصحة جيدة.
- هل تعلم؟
- أنك إذا حافظت علي نباتاتك سعيدة وبصحة جيدة سوف تعيش لعدة سنوات.

Lesson 7. The special house.

- سامح ونادين في اجازة من الدراسة في المنزل مع والديهم. ذات صباح كان سامح في حجرة المعيشة يلعب مع قطته الصغيرة. وفجأة قفزت القطه من فوق الكرسي لداخل حفرة صغيرة في الحائط! وضع سامح يده داخل الحفرة ليحضرها، لكن لم يشعر سامح سوا ببعض الورق بالداخل. قام بسحب ورقة وكانت ورقة قديمة. وعليها كانت رسالة مكتوبة بخط يد طفل تقول الرسالة: أهلاً أنا منيرة! أعيش هنا.
- شعر سامح بالفضول. في اليوم التالي، كانت السماء تمطر. كان يشعر سامح وأخته نادين بالملل. فقال سامح "هيا بنا نذهب لأعلي وننظر في غرفة الضيوف.
- في غرفة الضيوف وجدوا بعض الصناديق القديمة. نظر سامح في واحد منها ووجد منزل صغير ودمية. كانت الدمية جميلة وتحتها كان هناك كارت عيد ميلاد مكتوب عليه: إلي منيرة في عيد ميلادها، الكثير من الحب، جدتك.
- في ذلك الوقت نادا عليهم ابيهم في الطابق السفلي. قال سامح "أبي، من هي منيرة؟" كان يبدو علي الأب الصدمة. وسأل سامح "لماذا تسأل عن ذلك؟"
- رد عليه سامح قائلاً: "أنظر إلي هذه الدمية وهذا الكارت!" قال الأب وهو ينظر إلي تلك الأشياء "لا أصدق ذلك! دعني أخبرك عن تاريخ هذا المنزل. لقد تم بناءه من الطوب والحجر في الخمسينات. جدي [جدتكم الأكبر] عاشت هنا مع والديها وابيها وخمسة أخوة وأخوات.
- قالت نادين: "يا للعجب! هل تعتقد أن المنزل كان صغيراً جداً عليهم؟" قال الأب "نعم. فقد كان هناك ثمانية أشخاص وهناك ثلاثة غرف للنوم فقط." سأل سامح "هل تعتقد أنهم كانوا سعداء؟"
- قال الأب. "أعتقد أنهم كانوا سعداء مثلما نحن الآن."
- سألت نادين قائلة "لكن هل المنزل مختلف الآن؟"
- قال الأب "حسنًا، ليس حقًا. فالجدران لها لون مختلف لكن هذا هو الاختلاف فقط. أنا سعيد أنه لم يتغير لأن لدي ذكريات رائعة في نشأتي هنا أيضًا."
- قال سامح "لكنك لم تخبرنا حتي الآن من هي منيرة!"
- قال الأب "أنكم تعرف من هي بالفعل. منيرة هي جدتكم الكبيرة أي والدة جدتكم! أخمن أنها أول مرة تسمعون بها أسمها الأول. الأشياء التي وجدتها هي أشياء من طفولتها. أنا سعيد جداً إنها لدينا! شكرًا لكليكما!"



Unit 3

Lesson 1. Classroom of the world

الفصول الدراسية في العالم تختلف الفصول الدراسية في كل مدرسة. ها هما مكانان والتي تكون بهم الفصول الدراسية مختلفة قليلاً.

الفصول الدراسية علي الأسطح !

في مصر، تتلقي بعض الفصول دروسها في حديقة علي سطح المدرسة! يقوم مشروع "الشجرة المدرسية" بتصميم حدائق واسطح خضراء للمدارس في مصر.

الأسطح الخضراء هي حدائق في أعلي المبني تجلب الأسطح الخضراء الطبيعة إلي المدينة. كما أنها تقوم بتنقية الهواء وتبريده هذا يعني أنها مفيدة للبيئة.

يقوم المشروع بتعليم الطلاب والمدرسين كيفية زراعة حديقة علي السطح. ويتعرف الطلاب والمدرسين علي النباتات التي تنمو بشكل جيد في الطقس الحار والجاف.

في عام ٢٠١٧، بدأت الفصول الدراسية في أحدي المدارس بالذهاب إلي اسطحها الخضراء لتلقي الدروس. أعتقد الناس الذين قاموا بهذا المشروع أنه كان فكرة رائعة !

في عام ٢٠١٩، قاموا ببناء أول فصل دراسي لهم علي السطح وتم وضع المكاتب في الظل ولكن لم يكن هناك جدران.

تمتع كل من الطلبة والمدرسين بمساحة وكان بإمكانهم رؤية الزهور والنباتات. وفقاً لمشروع "الشجرة المدرسية" فان حدائق الاسطح تساعد الطلبة في العديد من مدارس المدينة.

فالاماكن الخضراء في الهواء الطلق تجعلنا نتمتع بالهدوء والصحة وهذا عظيم للعملية التعليمية.

الفصول الدراسية المتنقلة !

في شمال سيبيريا، يتلقي بعض الطلاب دروسهم في خيام وسط الجليد والثلج !

معظم الناس في شمال سيبيريا هم من البدو الرحالة مما يعني أنهم لا يعيشوا في مكان واحد. يتنقل هؤلاء البدو في زلاجات عبر الأراضي المتجمدة وينامون في خيام.

يعتني البدو بحيوانات الرنة ويأخذوه الي الأماكن التي يتواجد بها الطعام.

إذا كيف يتعلم اطفالهم ؟

هناك طريقتان.

الطريقة الأولى : هي ذهاب بعض الأطفال الي مدرسة داخلية. وتكون هذه الأطفال بعيدة عن اسرهم لعدة أشهر كل عام. ولا يستطيع هؤلاء الأطفال تعلم المهارات التقليدية من والديهم وغالبًا ما ينسون لغة ثقافتهم.

الطريقة الثانية : هي المدرسة المتنقلة [الرحالة]. وهي المدرسة التي تنتقل [تسافر] مع العائلات. وتكون الفصول في هذه المدرسة خيام علي الجليد أو حجلات متنقلة علي عجلات.

يدرس الأطفال في هذه المدرسة المواد الدراسية مثل الرياضيات والعلوم وعلم الحاسب الآلي. بالإضافة إلي ذلك دراسة لغتهم ومهاراتهم التقليدية. يكون الجدول المدرسي مرن فبذلك يستطيع الأطفال مساعدة عائلاتهم في الأعمال المنزلية.

يشعر الأطفال في المدرسة المتنقلة بالسعادة لأنهم يكونوا بالقرب من عائلاتهم ويحصلوا علي تعليم جيد. يتعلم الأطفال كل شيء عن كيفية المعيشة في أرضهم الجليدية.

Lesson 2. How does Lilly go to school ?

كيف تذهب ليلي إلي المدرسة ؟

مرحبًا أسمى ليلي ، وأذهب إلي المدرسة المتوسطة في سان فرانسيسكو، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. بدأت مدرسة في روضة الأطفال عندما كنت في السادسة من عمري والآن عمري أحد عشر عامًا وأنا في الصف السادس. أحب مدرستي. عندما كنت في روضة الأطفال، كنا نلعب كثيرًا وكان هناك الكثير من الألعاب داخل الفصل الدراسي. الآن في الصف السادس نقوم بأداء أنشطة كتابية أكثر وندرس مواد دراسية شيقة أكثر من مثل مادة تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات. احب استخدام أجهزة الكمبيوتر !

نحن نذهب إلي المدرسة من يوم الاثنين إلي يوم الجمعة. ليس من الضروري أن ارتدي زي مدرسي ولكن يجب أن تكون ملابسني وأحذيتي نظيفة. تبدأ المدرسة في الثامنة صباحًا وتنتهي في الثالثة مساءً. كثيرًا ما أذهب إلي المدرسة سيرًا علي الأقدام عندما يكون الجو مشمسًا وجافًا. وأحيانًا استقل الحافلة مع اصدقائي. لدينا ساعة لتناول وجبة الغداء وعادة أحضرها من المنزل. أتناول الطعام داخل الكافيتريا أو بالخارج في الصيف.

Lesson 3. Sports club

النادي الرياضي

- تدرينا اليوم بالداخل في النصف ساعة الأولي. أولًا كان علينا أن نركض ذهابًا وإيابًا في الملعب عشرون مرة. ثم تسلقنا الحبل. كان هذا صعبًا حقًا. قمنا بعد ذلك بالجري في سباق ٤٠٠ متر بالخارج. احب الجري ولكنه يجعلني متعبًا جدًا.

قمنا بعد ذلك باللعب لمدة ١٥ دقيقة وكان هذا رائعًا. لقد فاز فريقنا !

Photography club

نادي التصوير

لقد قمنا الاسبوع الماضي بنزهة في الحديقة.

وكان حينما يشير معلمنا الي شيء ما ، نقم بالتقاط صورة له. ولكن لم يكن في استطاعتنا سوي التقاط صورة واحدة له! لذلك، كان علينا النظر بحرص وعلينا ان نقرر اين نقف. لقد كان الأمر ممتع وهذا ما جعلني متحمس للتصوير.

عندما قمنا بمقارنة الصور بعد ذلك، كانت الصور مختلفة حقًا.

- تذهب "نادية" إلي نادي الموسيقى حيث يغنون الأغاني ويعزفون علي الآلات.

يتعلموا في نادي الموسيقى أغاني من جميع انحاء العالم. في نهاية الفصل الدراسي يقيمون حفلًا موسيقيًا لوالديهم.

- يذهب سامر إلي نادي الطبخ.

كل اسبوع في نادي الطبخ يقومون باعداد وجبة من بلدة مختلفة. يقوموا بالتقاط صورًا لهذه الوجبات للاحاقها بكتاب خاص بوصفات الطهي. يمكن للمشاركين في نادي الطبخ اخذ الطعام الي منازلهم ليتناولوا مع عائلاتهم.

- يذهب مالك إلي نادي السباحة ثلاث مرات اسبوعيًا مما يجعله قويًا ويتمتع بصحة جيدة. ويقوم مالك في بعض الأحيان بالمسابقات أيضًا.

- يستمتع "نادر" بالذهاب إلي نادي الدراما. يتعلموا هناك المسرحيات ويقوموا بإدائها امام والديهم. في بعض الأحيان يقوموا بصناعة ازياء خاصة ليرتديها الممثلون.

"Poster" Art club !

نادي الفن !

يعلم الجميع أن الفن مفيد لعقلك. فيجعلك الفن مسترخيًا وسعيًا.

تعال الي غرفة الفنون الساعة الواحدة ظهرًا أيام الثلاثاء لتتعلم الرسم والتلوين.

Tennis is terrific !

التنس رائع !

التنس رياضة رائعة. تجعلك رياضة التنس بصحة جيدة وسعيدًا! كل أربعاء في تمام الساعة الرابعة مساءً نقدم دروس خاصة برياضة التنس. انضم إلي نادينا لتتعلم مهارة جديدة وتتقابل مع أشخاص جديدة.

Lesson 4 : Green City School Open Day

اليوم المفتوح لمدرسة المدينة الخضراء

في مدرسة المدينة الخضراء، نحن متحمسون لمساعدة البيئة. تعال واكتشف لماذا نحن المدرسة الأكثر خضرة في المدينة! نرحب بالطلاب الجدد وأسراهم للإضمام إلينا في يومنا المفتوح في ٢٥ مايو.

- جدول اليوم المفتوح :

٩ صباحًا يصل الطلاب والعائلات الجدد إلى المدرسة. تقديم من قبل مدير المدرسة

١٠ صباحًا جولة في مباني المدرسة

أولاً : قم بزيارة مكتبتنا صديقة البيئة الجديدة. لماذا هي صديقة للبيئة؟ لأن كل الكهرباء تأتي من الألواح الشمسية الموجودة على السطح ثم تتوجه إلى غرفة إعادة التدوير. هذا هو المكان الذي يمكننا فيه إعادة تدوير الورق والبلاستيك والمواد الأخرى.

شاهد عرضًا توضيحيًا حول كيفية فرز النفايات من فصولنا الدراسية.

بعد ذلك تعال وشاهد ملعبنا البيئي.

يتكون إطار التسلق في الغالب من مواد مُعاد تدويرها. يوجد أيضًا مسار طبيعي حول الملعب، حيث يمكننا التعرف على النباتات والحيوانات والحشرات.

١٢ ظهرًا استمتع بوجبة غداء لذيذة في حديقة مدرستنا، حيث نزرع زهورنا وفواكهنا وخضرواتنا.

بعد الظهر هل لديك أي أسئلة؟ هذه فرصتك لسؤال طلاب

ومعلمي المدرسة الخضراء!

يوجد موقف سيارات صغير، لكننا نشجعك على المشي أو ركوب الدراجة أو القُدوم بالحافلة!

Lesson 5. "The bridge to school"

جسرًا إلى المدرسة

- استلقت لينا مستيقظة تستمع إلي الرياح والمطر. استمرت العاصفة طوال الليل.

ثم، عندما اشرفت الشمس، سمعت لينا صوت اصطدام. ركضت لينا إلي النافذة. وسألت اختها سارة "ما هذا؟". نظرت لينا إلي النهر القريب من منزلهم وقالت "أوه لا! لقد انهار الجسر!" كانت القرية التي تعيش بها لينا وسارة صغيرة وتحيط بها جبال شديدة الانحدار.

وكان ذلك الجسر الذي يمر فوق النهر هو أسرع طريق للوصول إلي المدينة، حيث المدرسة والمتاجر والأطباء والمركز الرياضي. ركض

الاختان إلي المطبخ ليخبروا والديهم. قالت الأم "لقد استمعت للراديو. وقالوا أن العاصفة ستوقف قريبًا." وبعد ذلك يمكننا أن نري ما حدث." وأخيرًا، توقف المطر، وتوجهت لينا وعائلتها إلي النهر. وكان هناك اشخاص اخرون أيضًا.

اشار والد لينا إلي الجسر المكسور وقال لن يمكننا الذهاب إلي

المدينة أو المدرسة. سألت لينا "وماذا علينا أن نفعل؟" في ذلك اليوم أضطر الأختان للبقاء في المنزل وأرسل اليهم المعلم مهام (عملاً) للقيام بها عبر الانترنت.

في صباح اليوم التالي . وصلت حافلة مدرسية إلي ساحة القرية. قالت سارة "أنظري يا لينا ، الحافلة هنا!"

قالت لينا "الحافلة؟ لكن الطريق طويل جدًا!" قالت سارة "أعلم، ولكن هذا هو الشيء الوحيد الذي يمكننا القيام به." أخذت سارة حقيبتها وركضت إلي الباب.

نظرت لينا إلي الجسر عند صعودها الحافلة رويتها للجسر المكسور جعلها حزينة. ستختلف حياتهم حتي يقوم شخص ما باصلاح هذا الجسر. لقد استمتعت لينا بالمرور عبره في كل صباح، والمشي أعلي التل علي الجانب الآخر. كانت لينا في كثير من الأحيان أول من يصل إلي المدرسة. ولكن الآن سوف تتأخر! استغرقت الرحلة بالحافلة الي المدرسة ساعتين. كان الجو حارًا وكانت حركة المرور بطيئة. فشعرت لينا بالنعاس والحزن.

عندما وصلت لينا المدرسة طلبت استخدام الكمبيوتر وقامت بكتابة خطاب عن العاصفة والجسر المكسور. وعندما وصلت لينا للمنزل التقطت صورًا للجسر.

قالت لها معلمتها أن كتابة خطاب ليراه الجميع فكرة رائعة، لان الجميع يحب أن يعرف عن الجسر يحاول المساعدة. قامت المعلمة بمساعدة لينا في إرسال الخطاب والصور الي الصحف والمواقع في جميع أنحاء البلاد.

استمرت الحافلة في نقل لينا واصدقائها إلي المدرسة والذي فاجئهم، عندما عادوا إلي المنزل رأوا المهندسين وعمال البناء عند النهر ابتسموا للأطفال. قال رجل يرتدي معطف أصفر "لقد سمعنا عن خطابكم والآن نحن نشيد جسرًا جديدًا لكي تتمكنوا من الذهاب إلي المدرسة بسرعة. وبعد مرور أسبوع كان هناك جسر معدني جديد. قالت سارة "أحسن يا لينا. لقد ساعد خطابك الجميع!"

Lesson 6. "Are school trips important ? by Nesma, age 12"

هل الرحلات المدرسية مهمة؟ بقلم نسمة، ١٢ عامًا.

اعتقد أن الرحلات المدرسية هي تجارب تعليمية مثيرة. أولاً يمكننا ان نتعلم الكثير من خلال زيارة اماكن جديدة.

عندما نتعلم عن شيئًا ما في الفصل الدراسي ثم نراه في الحياة الواقعية، فأنا نفهمه بشكل أفضل. بالإضافة إلي ذلك، غالبًا ما تكون الرحلات المدرسية شيقة أكثر من مجرد القراءة عن الأشياء في الكتب أو مشاهدة مقاطع الفيديو.

وأخيرًا، يمكننا مواصلة التعلم عندما نعود إلي الفصل الدراسي بعد الرحلة الدراسية. يمكننا عمل مشروع عن ما رأيناه في الرحلة. باختصار، تعتبر الرحلات المدرسية جزء مهم جدًا من العملية التعليمية. وفي اعتقادي علينا أن نحاول الذهاب في رحلة مدرسية واحدة كل عام.

Is studying the past important ?

هل دراسة الماضي مهمة؟

أعتقد ان دراسة الماضي تساعدنا في فهم الحاضر. في رأيي، من المهم أن ندرك كيف ساهمت أحداث الماضي في صناعة الحاضر. بداية، يمكننا أن نتعلم الكثير من خلال دراسة الماضي. فيساعدنا التاريخ في فهم مجتمعتنا والثقافات الأخرى لأننا نتعرف علي الحياة في الماضي والفنانين والعلماء ورجال السياسة المهمين. بالإضافة إلي ذلك نتعلم كيف ولماذا تغيرت الحياة علي مر السنين.



Unit 4

Lesson 1. Why we're all special by Reem

أستاذة ميني سألتنا اليوم «كيف نحن مختلفين عن بعضنا البعض؟» هذا سؤال سهل الإجابة عليه! أسر طويل جدًا. هو أطول

من التلاميذ الآخرين في الصف الدراسي. أنا قصيرة جدًا. لدي عينان خضراء اللون وأسرها بنيت اللون. شعر سليم مجعد لكن وليد شعره مفرد جدًا وغير مجعد ويرتدي نظارة. ترتدي أنجي تقويم الأسنان لتساعد أسنانها علي أن تكون مستقيمة. تستخدم أمل كرسي متحرك لأنها لا تستطيع المشي جيدًا. امينة ترتدي سماعة الأذن لان لديها مشاكل في السمع.

لدينا عائلات مختلفة أيضًا. لدي ثلاثة أخوات وامل أفضل صديقاتي لها أخوين! صديقتي داليا تحب الرياضة لكي أفضل دروس اللغات. بعد ذلك سألتنا الأستاذة ميني أن تخبر صديق لنا عن شيء يجعله مميز. أخبرت أمل أنني أحب شعرها المجعد وطريقتها في مساعدتي في مادة الرياضيات. فهي أفضل تلميذ في الصف في مادة الرياضيات! وهي أخبرتني أنها تحب طريقي في جعلها تضحك عندما تكون حزينة قليلاً. قالت الأستاذة ميني «تخيلوا عالم به جميعنا متشابهين تمامًا، كيف سيكون هذا العالم؟»

قال شريف «في الواقع أنا أعتقد أن هذا سيكون ممل إلى حد ما». وقالت سالي: «أن هذا سيكون مملاً حقاً. ثم قالت الأستاذة ميني «وتخيلوا أن نكون جميعنا بارعين في نفس الأشياء؟» فقلت لها «سيكون حينها هذا العالم غير مثير إطلاقاً».

قالت الأستاذة ميني: «من الجيد أن يكون كل شخص مختلف عن الآخر، فنحن لا نبدو متشابهين تمامًا لأن عائلتنا أيضًا مختلفة. البعض منا طويل القامة والبعض قصير القامة، البعض منا شعره مجعد والبعض لديهم شعر مفرد. البعض منا لديه اثنين من الأخوة والأخوات، والبعض لديهم ثلاثة. البعض يبرع في الموسيقى، وآخرون يبرعون في الرياضة». الجميع اتفق مع رأي الأستاذة ميني. ثم قالت الأستاذة ميني «أن الشيء المهم هو أن نرعي بعضنا البعض في الصف الدراسي. لا يجب أن يكون الأشخاص قاسيين تجاه أي شخص بسبب كونه مختلف عنهم. مدرستنا هي مكان للجميع، فجميعنا نتساوي في الأهمية».

سألت أنجي «لكن ماذا يجب علينا أن نفعل إذا رأينا شخص يتعامل بشكل قاسي في المدرسة؟ لقد رأيت شخص يزج طارق منذ بضعة أيام لانه نسي نظارته ولذا لم يستطع الرؤية جيدًا». قالت الأستاذة ميني «في كل مرة يجب أن تأتي لتخبرني أو تخبر أي معلم آخر. يجب علينا في المدرسة أن نساعد بعضنا البعض».

Lesson 2

اليوم دعي معلمنا شخص مثير للاهتمام يدعي استاذ كمال للحضور للصف الدراسي ليتحدث معنا. أخبرنا استاذنا كمال عن أفضل الطرق للتواصل مع الأشخاص الذين يعانون من مشكلات في السمع. في البداية سألتنا ما هي الأصوات التي نسمعها كل يوم. كان لدينا الكثير من الأفكار. قال صديقي آدم أنه سمع الآخرين يتحدثون، وقلت أنا أنني سمعت صوت القط الذي نملكه في الصباح!

ثم سألتنا استاذ كمال ماذا نعتقد سوف يحدث إذا لم نكن قادرين علي السمع جيدًا. هذا السؤال جعلنا نفكر حقاً! سألت آدم إذا ما كنا سنكون قادرين علي سماع الأصوات العالية.

يعتقد بعض الناس أن الحاضر ممتع وشيق أكثر من الماضي ولكي لا اتفق معهم. فالتاريخ شيق ومثير لأنه مليء بالقصص الرائعة والأشخاص المثيرة للاهتمام.

وأخيرًا يساعدنا التاريخ علي التعلم من أخطاء الماضي حتي لا نكرر نفس الأخطاء في المستقبل.

خلاصة القول، اعتقد أن دراسة التاريخ جزء مهم من تعليمنا فيساعدنا التاريخ علي التعلم من الماضي ويساعدنا فهم لماذا وكيف تتغير الأشياء.

Lesson 7. "The doctor comes to school"

لم يرغب نيسن من الاستيقاظ [النهوض]. فكانت الشمس مشرقة ولكن سريره كان مريحًا. ناد الأب "نيسن، حان وقت المدرسة!". ذهب نيسن إلي المطبخ وكانت الأم تعد الأقطار وكان أخوه يلعب. قال نيسن "لماذا يجب علينا الذهاب إلي المدرسة؟ بائو يلعب طوال اليوم حياته سهلة".

قالت والدته "سيبدأ بائو الدراسة العام المقبل عندما يبلغ السابعة من عمره".

قال الأب "أنا ذاهب إلي القصر يا نيسن. دعنا نسير معًا. غادر الأب ونيسن المنزل. كان والد نيسن كاتب فكان يقضي طوال اليوم يكتب عما يحدث في بلاط الفرعون. سأل نيسن والده "هل كنت تحب المدرسة يا ابي؟" بالطبع أريد أن أتعلم القراءة والكتابة، كما تفعل أنت. "لماذا اردت أن تكون كاتبًا؟ فرد الأب وقال "لقد كان والدي كاتبًا وهكذا جدي. أنها مهنة مهمة. ستعرف ماذا تريد أن تصبح يومًا ما".

كان نيسن في حيرة من أمره ولم يعرف بعد ما هي الوظيفة التي يريد القيام بها في المستقبل. وفي وقت لاحق من ذلك الصباح، كان نيسن يجلس علي الأرض، يستمع إلي المعلم ويكتب علي اللوح الخشبي الخاص به. فجأة قفز صبي وبدأ بالصراخ وكان المعلم مصدوم وقال له "أجلس" وصاح شخص "هناك ثعبان!". فنظر الجميع. فكان هناك ثعبان بني صغير يتحرك علي أرضية الفصل.

حاول الصبي أن يلقي الثعبان بعيدًا لكن الثعبان عض يده وصرخ الصبي. قال المعلم "أسرع، يا نيسن! واحضر الطبية، ستعرف ما يجب القيام به".

ركض نيسن وصبي آخر إلي مبني الطبية. كانت الطبيبة تجلس علي مكتب مسرعين وعليه لفات [مجموعة] من ورق البردي. عندما دخلوا المكتب، كانت الطبيبة تقرأ وتسجل الملاحظات. فصاح نيسن "ساعدنا من فضلك، لقد عض الثعبان صديقنا!" أخذت الطبيبة حقيبتها وبعض المخطوطات من ورق البردي. وركضوا إلي المدرسة، حيث كان الصبي يبكي كانت يده حمراء اللون وملتهبة.

سأل المعلم الطبيبة "هل سيكون بخير" سألت الطبيبة وهي تفحص يد الصبي "ما نوع هذا الثعبان؟". قال نيسن "أنه ثعبان صغير، لونه بني به حلقات غامقة". نظرت الطبيبة إلي أحدي لفات ورق البردي وقالت "حسنًا. هذا الثعبان ليس سام".

أخرجت الطبيبة بعض الأعشاب من حقيبتها ووضعتهم في زجاجة زيت وهزتها ثم سكبت السائل علي قطعة قماش. قالت الطبيبة "ضع هذه مكان العضة." ستؤلمك لمدة قليلة ولكن لن تمرض. "لقد كان نيسن في ذهول. كان ينظر بينما الطبيبة تحزم مخطوطات البردي وحقيبتها. سأل نيسن "معذرة، كيف تعلمتي أن تكوني طبيبة؟". قالت الطبيبة "يستغرق هذا وقتًا طويلًا! إذا كنت تريد أن تكون طبيبةً اعمل باجتهاد هنا في المدرسة!".

قال الاستاذ كمال أن آدم علي صواب. فمن الصعب سماع الأصوات الهادئة. بعد ذلك، سألنا أستاذ كمال عن الطرق التي نتواصل بها مع بعضنا البعض. كنا نظن أن هناك الكثير من الطرق. قلت أن الحديث هو وسيلة للتواصل. وقال آدم إن استخدام التعبيرات، مثل الابتسام، أمر آخر. وقال يونس إن كتابة الرسائل على هاتفه هي وسيلته المفضلة للتواصل. ثم أخبرنا السيد كمال عن طريقة ذكية جدًا للتواصل! هل يمكنك تخمين ما هو؟

Lesson 3.

ديفيد أغيليا وأمفوكس هو شخص من اسبانيا. عندما كان في سن الثامنة عشر صنع ذراع اصطناعية من المكعبات البلاستيكية لأنه كان لديه ذراع واحدة. قام ديفيد بتصميمها بكوع متحرك ويد لتمسك الأشياء. كتب والد ديفيد كتاب مصور عن ديفيد. يعتقد الجميع أن الكتاب شيء عظيم لأنه يساعد الأشخاص على فهم الكثير من الاعاقات. صناعة الازرع والاقدام الاصطناعية شيء قد يكون صعبًا، لكن ديفيد صنع ذراعه بسعر رخيص باستخدام المكعبات البلاستيكية. يريد ديفيد بعد تخرجه من الجامعة أن يصنع أذرع واقدام اصطناعية بسعر رخيص لجميع الناس.

Lesson 4.

استاذة راندا : حسنًا أريد من الجميع أن ينضموا لمجموعات ليصنعوا ملصقات عن الحيوانات التي تعيش في الغابة المطيرة الاستوائية. يجب أن يكون الملصق اعلان عن الغابات المطيرة. أريد أن تكون الملصقات ملونة بها معلومات شيقة. الآن يمكنكم العمل في المجموعات الخاصة بكم. أريد أن يعمل الجميع معًا ولا تنسوا أن العطف منهم في العمل.

فارس : تامر، جميلة، وائل. هل يمكنني العمل معكم؟

تامر : لا للأسف. فنحن نعمل بالفعل مع مجدي.

مجدي أحضر إلي هنا!

مجدي: أنا قادم!

فارس : شريف ، لامار. هل يمكنني العمل معكم؟

شريف : لا فنحن نعمل مع فريدة.

بدأ فارس في الشعور بالحزن قليلاً وذهب ليتحدث مع

استاذة راندا.

فارس : لا يمكنني أن أجد مجموعة أعمل معها يا استاذة راندا.

فجميع لديه مجموعة يعمل معها.

استاذة راندا : يا عزيزي! بالطبع يمكننا أن نجد لك شخص ما. دعنا

نذهب ونتحدث إلي أميرة. مع من تعملين يا أميرة في

مجموعتك؟

أميرة : اعمل مع سامر ومريم، لكننا نحتاج شخص آخر.

استاذة راندا : رائع. ها هو فارس!

أميرة : أهلا فارس! ماذا تحب أن تفعل في صنع الملصق؟

فارس : أحب أن ارسم صورًا!

أميرة : هذا رائع! أنا جيدة في الكتابة، وسامر جيد في التصميم

ومريم رائعة في البحث عن المعلومات وإيجاد الصور. إذا

كنت تستطيع رسم صور فسنكون فريقًا جيدًا!

بعد قليل ...

الاستاذة راندا : هذه الملصقات رائعة. من قام بعمل هذه الصور

الجميلة؟

سامر : لقد صنعها فارس يا استاذة راندا. لقد عمل بإجتهد حقًا ليصنع ملصقًا.

بيتسم فارس ويبدو فخورًا جدًا.

ريم : هل تحبون الذهاب للتسوق معي كليكما؟ أريد شراء هدية لامي.

مازن : هذا جميل يا ريم. هل هذا عيد ميلاد والدتك؟

ريم : لا ليس هو. أنا فقط أريد شراء هدية لها لكونها أفضل أم. سوف استخدم النقود التي حصلت عليها في عيد ميلادي

الشهر الماضي.

تاليا : أنها فكرة رائعة. تقول أمي دائمًا. «العطف مهم وهو شيء لطيف للقيام به.» سوف تحب والدتك الهدية. ماذا تريد أن تشتري لها؟

ريم : كنت افكر في شراء بعض الكعك المميز لها أو الكيك ، لقد رأيت اعلان عن مخبز جديد في المدينة. فهم يصنعون كيك وكعك مميز جدًا، ويضعونهم في علبة بيضاء عليها بعض الورق الجميل.

مازن : سوف تكون هدية رائعة يا ريم. أين المخبز؟ هيا بنا نذهب إلى هناك الآن.

ريم : أنا غير متأكدة. يدعي ابتكارات الكيك. من المحتمل أن يكون لديهم موقع الكتروني.

تاليا : حسنًا. إذا نظرنا إلي موقعهم يمكن أن نجد عنوانهم والمزيد من المعلومات. مثل ما نوع الكيك الذي يصنعونه والاسعار.

مازن : عظيم. سوف أبحث في هاتفني واجد الموقع الالكتروني.

ريم : شكرًا مازن.

Lesson 5. The elephants and the mice

منذ سنوات عديدة عاش قطع من الأفيال في الهند. كانوا سعداء وكان قائدهم هو الملكة التي كانت أطيب وأفضل الأفيال. أثناء النهار كان الجو حار جدًا. وكان الأفيال يحبون السباحة في البحيرة. بالقرب من البحيرة كان هناك قرية قديمة، لم يكن يعيش فيها أي شخص لكن كان بها المئات من الفئران. كان قائدهم الملك طيب. كان الأفيال والفئران يعيشون معًا بشكل جيد. لكن يوم ما قاموا الأفيال بتغيير طريقهم للبحيرة مما يعني أنهم ساروا بمحاذاة ممر قريب للفئران.

العديد من الأفيال لم يرو الفئران وساروا عليهم وقاموا بأذئهم. بعد قليل قال الفئران لملك الفئران « هذا لا يمكن أن يستمر! هذا غير آمن لنا!»

قال ملك الفئران «لا تقلقوا سوف اتحدث إلي ملكة الأفيال» ثم ذهب ليتقابل معها:

تقابل ملك الفئران مع ملكة الأفيال وشرح لها المشكلة.

كانت الملكة في صدمة عندما سمعت ماذا يحدث ووافقت علي الذهاب من طريق مختلف.

قال ملك الفئران «شكرًا للاستماع واحترام احتياجاتنا. اتمني يوما ما أن نستطيع مساعدتكم إذا كنتم في موقع صعب.»

أومأت الملكة رأسها بالموافقة لكنها فكرت نحن الأفيال اقوي الحيوانات في الهند، لماذا نحتاج للمساعدة من فئران صغيرة الحجم؟»

بعد أسابيع قليلة كان بعض الصيادين يشاهدون الأفيال وتركوا شباكهم. وفي اليوم التالي عندما ذهب الأفيال إلي البحيرة تم أصطيادهم في الشباك. لم يستطيع الأفيال الحركة وقاموا بالزئير

مرات عديدة مصدرين أعلى الأصوات. سمع الفئران الصوت العالي وجاءوا راكضين. وبسرعة بدأ الفئران في قضم الشباك حتى استطاع الأفيال الخروج.

في اليوم التالي جاءت ملكة الأفيال لرؤية ملك الفئران وقالت «شكرًا لكم جدًا! لقد أنقذتوا بعض الأفيال من الصيادين! لقد أوضحتم لنا أن كل أفراد المجتمع من الأكبر إلى الأصغر يمكنه أن يحدث فرقًا.» شعر ملك الفئران أنه أكثر الفئران سعادة وفخر في القرية.

Lesson 6.

أهلا بالجميع.

كيف هي أموركم؟

اسمي داليا. عمري أحد عشر سنة واعيشت في مدينة الإسكندرية. اذهب للمدرسة في مدرسة اليكس الحديثة. أنها مدرسة رائعة، ولدي أصدقاء رائعين. أنا طويلة إلى حد ما وشعري طويل وبني اللون. أضع تقويم الاسنان. لدي أخ وأخت أكبر سنًا مني، لذلك يدعوني بالطفل الرضيع في العائلة!

أنا حريصة علي السير مع عائلتي واصدقائي. والريف القريب من منزلي رائع حقًا. أنا أحب التصوير. أحب التقاط الصور لكل الأشياء الجميلة التي أراها في الريف. وأحب أيضًا الاستماع إلي موسيقي بلدي والموسيقي من كل أنحاء العالم. بالإضافة إلى هذا أحب الرياضة جدًا. لعب الكرة الطائرة في النادي المحلي. ولدينا مباريات مرة في الشهر تقريبًا. في العطلة الأسبوعية أحب الذهاب إلى المركز التجاري مع اصدقائي وعائلتي، ثم اذهب لمشاهدة التلفزيون مع جدتي في منزلها. نتحدث كثيرًا وهي تعيش بالقرب من منزلي لذلك من السهل علي الرجوع للمنزل.

افكر كثيرًا في المستقبل. اعتقد أننا أود أن أكون طبيبة اسنان مثل والدي. ماذا عنك؟ ماذا تبدو؟ ما هي هواياتك؟ أكتب وأخبرني عن نفسك!

Lesson 7. Hana saves the day

هنا صديقة جيدة تعيش في شارعى. في يوم ما بعد المدرسة اتصلت علي وقالت «مشايقي الجديدة وصلت، هل تريدان المجيء ومساعدتي في تزيينها؟»

ركضت لمنزلها وأنا أشعر بالحماس. تتسلم هنا مشايه جديدة كل عام لأنها تزداد طولًا. عندما تصل المشايه الجديدة نقوم بتزيينها معًا. هنا تفضل اللون الأخضر لذا قمنا بطلائها باللون الأخضر وتم تزيينها بالنجوم والملصقات أنها تبدو رائعة. سألت هنا «ماذا يجب علينا أن نفعل الآن يا ريم؟» قلت لها «اعتقد أنه ينبغي علينا الذهاب للحديقة العامة.» نحن عادة ما نذهب للتمشية إلى الحديقة العامة بعد اليوم الدراسي. دنيا اخصائية العلاج الطبيعي التي تعالج هنا تقول أنه من المهم لها أن تتنفس هواء متجدد وتدريب قدميها لتصبح اقوى.

تقابلنا مع اصدقائنا في الحديقة العامة. قالوا اصدقائنا أن مشايه هنا الجديدة تبدو رائعة. رشا صديقتنا الجديدة سألت هنا لماذا تحتاجين إلى المشايه.

قالت هنا «حسنًا»، عندما ولدت حدث شيء لعقلي والان يعمل عقلي بشكل مختلف عن الآخرين. يسميه والدي عقلي المميز. تسمى هذه الحالة الشلل الدماغى.

سألت رشا «هل يمكنك القيام بكل شيء بالمشايه؟»

قالت هنا «لا فهناك كرسي خاص لتناول الوجبات في المنزل وللخروج في السيارة هناك كرسي آخر مميز ومريح جدًا. ثم سرنا أكثر

قليلاً مع اصدقائنا. كانت نها تسير في الخلف مع نادين صديقتنا. فجأة جاءت سيدة تركض في اتجاهنا وهي تبكي وقالت «لا أستطيع أن أجد طفلي الصغير! لقد استدرت لاحضر له وجبة خفيفة من حقيبتي، والان لا أراه!»

سألته رشا: «كم عمر طفلك الصغير؟» ردت السيدة قائلة «عام واحد فقط. هو لا يستطيع المشى، هو يحبو علي الأرض.» لذا قمنا جميعًا بالبحث في الحشائش ومطعم الوجبات الخفيفة لكننا لم نراه، ثم لاحظت أن هناك مجموعة من الأشجار خلف المكان التي كانت تجلس فيه السيدة، فقلت لهم «دعونا ننظر هناك! ولكن أين هي هنا؟» لم يعرف أحد. قمنا جميعًا بالركض إلي الأشجار خائفين بشدة لأن المكان كان قريب لطريق السيارات. صرخت السيدة قائلة «آدم» وتوقفت عن البكاء. كان آدم هناك يدفع نفسه لأعلي علي مشايه هنا، وكانت هنا تتحدث إليه بهدوء. كانت أمه شاكرة جدًا أن هنا وجدته. ارتحنا جميعًا وشعرنا بالسعادة وتناولنا ايس كريم لنحتفل!

What is Adam's disability ?

الوقت هو الخميس بعد الظهر، كان هذا أفضل يوم في الأسبوع لآدم ذهب آدم إلي نادي كرة السلة بعد اليوم الدراسي يوم الخميس. كان اليوم مميزًا. كانت والدته تنتظره عند مدخل المدرسة. قالت والدته «لقد احضرت لك بعض الماء ووجبة خفيفة يا آدم. يجب أن تتناول شيء قبل اللعب.» رد آدم قائلاً «شكرًا أمي، لقد نسيت تناول الطعام» قالت الأم مبتسمة «ذلك لأنك متحمس جدًا. هيا يا آدم دعنا نركب السيارة.»

بعد خمس عشر دقيقة وصلوا إلي المركز الرياضي. رأي آدم صديقه حازم ينتظره عند المدخل. قال حازم «أهلا آدم هل انت متحمس للمباراة؟» رد آدم «أهلا حازم، نعم! ستكون أكثر مباراة مشوقة علي الاطلاق.»

أنتظر آدم والدته حتي تخرج له الكرسي المتحرك من السيارة. قال آدم «أنظري يا أمي. استاذ عادل اخصائي العلاج الطبيعي المعالج لي هناك. لقد حضر لمشاهدة المباراة. دعينا نلقي التحية.»

بدأ آدم لعب كرة السلة بالكرسي المتحرك منذ ستة شهور مضت وهذه كانت أول مباراة له وهو كابتن الفريق. بدأت المباراة بشكل جيد وكان فريق آدم محققًا تقدمًا حتي آخر خمسة دقائق عندما سجل الفريق الآخر نقطتين. كان هذا أمر خطير. لقد تبقى ثلاثة دقائق علي نهاية المباراة. ثم دقيقتين فجأة حصل ماجد علي الكرة وقذفها لحازم وبسرعة اجتاز حازم لاعبين وقذف الكرة لآدم. كان متبقي ستون ثانية. أمسك آدم بالكرة وأوقف كرسيه المتحرك ثم قذف الكرة عاليًا في الهواء لتسقط في منتصف شبكة كرة السلة! هتف الجميع بصوت عالي!

فاز فريق آدم بالمباراة! يا له من يوم عظيم!

A wonderful surprise

P.173

كانت نهاية اليوم الدراسي، وقام أسر بوضع أقلام الحبر وأقلام الرصاص في مكانها بعناية، نظر من نافذة الفصل ليرى والدته، لكنه لم يتمكن من رؤيتها. أخذت معلمته السيدة إيمان الأطفال إلى الخارج، ثم رأى أسر جدته تنتظر عند بوابة المدرسة. ابتسم ولوّح بيده لها.

أحب أسر أن تصحبه جدته للمنزل واحتضنها.
قال أسر : «يالها من مفاجأة جميلة ! لم أكن أعلم أنك ستأتي اليوم». ابتمت الجدة قائلة : «والدتك مشغولة، لذا فأنا هنا اليوم. والآن أين أختك؟» رأوا ميار تخرج من فصلها الدراسي، وكانت مع صديقاتها، وكانت تحمل كتابًا. وكانت تبدو سعيدة جدًا. جاءت معلمة ميار، المعلمة عزة، للتحدث مع الجدة.

P.174

قالت المعلمة عزة : «ميار لديها كتاب جديد. فيه كلمات يمكنك أن تقرأها لها. وفيه أيضًا كلمات بطريقة برايل تستطيع أن تقرأها بنفسها».

قالت الجدة : «شكرًا لك ! يمكننا أن نقرأ معًا هذا المساء». «هل سنذهب إلى منزلك اليوم يا جدتي؟» سألت ميار. «نعم، نحن كذلك. والدتك ووالدك مشغولان. هل يجب أن نصنع الكعك؟». «نعم من فضلك!» قال أسر وميار. بقي الأطفال في منزل الجدة حتى المساء. وصل والداهم بعد العشاء. قالت والدتهم : «شكرًا على اصطحاب الأطفال للمنزل يا أمي».

ردت الجدة : «العفو يا سلمى ! أحب وجودهم هنا». «هل قضيتم وقتًا ممتعًا مع جدتك اليوم؟» سألت أمهم. قالت ميار : «نعم بالطبع ! وانظري إلى كتابي الجديد من المدرسة!» قال والدهما : «إنه كتاب رائع. فلنقرأه عندما نعود إلى المنزل». كانت والدته وأبيهم سعداء برؤية كتاب ميار الجديد. عندما كانت ميار طفلة، تعلم والداها طريقة برايل، لقد ساعدوها على القراءة. والآن، يحبون القراءة مع ابنتهم في المساء. ركب جميع أفراد الأسرة السيارة للعودة إلى المنزل، وعندما ذهب أسر لوضع الحقائب المدرسية في صندوق السيارة المفتوح، لاحظ شيئًا غريبًا، لقد رأى حذاء والدته وأبيه هناك، وكانا مغطيين بالطين. «أحذيتهم مغطاة بالطين حقًا. هل ذهب أمي وأبي إلى المزرعة؟» فكر أسر هكذا. ثم ركب أسر السيارة وذهبوا جميعًا إلى المنزل.

P.175

في صباح اليوم التالي، أثناء تناول الإفطار، قالت والدة الأطفال : «سوف تأخذك جدتك إلى المدرسة مرة أخرى اليوم». «هل ستعودين إلى المنزل متأخرة يا أمي؟» سأل أسر. «نعم، أنا مشغولة جدًا هذا الأسبوع. سأتي لأصطحبكم للمنزل من منزل الجدة في الساعة السابعة». قال أسر : «حسنًا».

«اليوم نادى الموسيقى، فلا تنسى الجيتار يا أسر. ميار لديك حصص خرف في وقت الغداء، فتذكري المريلة الخاصة بك».

P.176

«هل يمكننا الاستماع إلى كتاب صوتي يا أمي؟» سألت ميار. «نعم، بالطبع»، قالت والدتها. بينما تختار ميار ووالدتها كتابًا صوتيًا، كان أسر ينظر من النافذة، كان يفكر في حفلة المدرسة الأسبوع المقبل، كان يأمل أن يتذكرها والديه، لقد أرادهم حقًا أن يأتوا ويشاهدوه. أراد أسر أن يسأل والدته عن الحفل لكنها كانت تبدو متعبة. فقرر أن يسألها فيما بعد. في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، كان الوالدان مشغولين مرة أخرى، خطت سلمى لأخذ الأطفال إلى منزل الجدة. لقد كان يومًا جميلًا، لذلك قرر أسر أن يأخذ معه كرة القدم. ذهب إلى الجراج للحصول على كرة القدم. خارج الجراج رأى مجرفة والده. كانت مغطاة بالطين. نظر أسر حول الفناء. لم يكن هناك شيء مختلف هناك، ولم تكن هناك أشجار أو نباتات جديدة، لماذا كانت المجرفة مغطاة بالطين جدًا؟ «هذا غريب» فكر أسر كذلك.

P.177

كان أسر وميار يذهبان إلى منزل جدتهما كل يوم في ذلك الأسبوع. كان أسر قلقًا بشأن الحفل. لقد أراد حقًا أن يذهب والديه إلى الحفلة الموسيقية. أرادهم أن يسمعه وهو يغني ويعزف على الجيتار. هل تذكروا ذلك؟ لقد كانوا مشغولين للغاية. لقد تدرب على أغنيته كثيرًا لأنه أراد أن يسير الحفل على ما يرام.

وفي وقت لاحق، كان أسر يلعب في ساحة جدته بينما كانت ميار تستمتع إلى كتاب صوتي. جاء صديق أسر، شادي. قال شادي : «مرحبًا أسر. لم أكن أعلم أنك تعيش هنا». قال أسر : «إنه منزل جدتي». سأل شادي : «هل تريد أن تأتي إلى الحديقة معي أنا ووالدي؟» قال أسر : «نعم، ولكن على أن أسأل جدتي». دخل أسر إلى الداخل وقال لجدته : «جدتي، هل يمكنني الذهاب إلى الحديقة مع شادي ووالده، من فضلك؟» أجابت الجدة : «نعم بالطبع. خذ زجاجة الماء الخاصة بك!»

P.179

استمتع أسر وشادي في الحديقة. وعندما شعروا بالتعب، جلسوا بالقرب من بعض الشجيرات الكثيفة. شربوا بعض الماء وأكلوا بعض الفاكهة. كانوا يجلسون بهدوء عندما سمعوا الناس يتحدثون. قال شادي : «يبدو هذا مثل صوت والديك». «نظر أسر حوله. كان شادي على حق. بدا الأمر وكأنهم كانوا قريبين - ولكن أين هم؟» تجول أسر وشادي بين الشجيرات. وعلى الجانب الآخر كان هناك مجموعة من الناس يعملون. وكان والدا أسر هناك، يحفران. ركض أسر إلى والديه. وعندما رآه والديه، كان متفاجئين. «أسر! ماذا تفعل هنا؟» سأل والده. أجاب أسر : «لقد دعاني شادي ووالده إلى الحديقة وقد وافقت جدتي». «نظر أسر إلى الأسفل ورأى حذاء والده الموحد المغطاة بالطين. سأل أسر : «ولكن ماذا فعلوا هنا؟»

P.180

نظر والدا أسر إلى بعضهما البعض وضحكا. وضع والده المجرفة جانبًا. عرض الوالدين لأسر وشادي لوحة معلومات كبيرة عليها مخطط، أظهر المخطط الكثير من معدات اللعب الجديدة والمثيرة. قالت سلمى : «نحن نبي ملعبًا بحديقة حسية. إنها مخصصة لجميع الأطفال في الحي ليستمتعوا». وصل والد شادي وقال : «رائع ! سيكون هذا مذهلاً». «ما هي الحديقة الحسية؟» سأل شادي. قال والد أسر : «الحديقة الحسية هي المكان الذي يمكنك من خلاله سماع ورؤية ولمس جميع أنواع الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام». «لم تتمكن ميار والعديد من الأطفال الآخرين من استخدام بعض المعدات الموجودة في الملعب القديم، لذلك، نحن نعمل مع هؤلاء البنائين لتوفير مساحة يمكن للجميع الاستمتاع بها، هناك نافورة، وستكون هناك أجراس رياح ستكون هناك مسارات واسعة، حتى يكون من السهل على الأشخاص الذين يستخدمون الكراسي المتحركة الاستمتاع بالحديقة». قالت والدة أسر : «نحن نزرع الزهور أيضًا ستكون رائحتهم رائعة». «هذا رائع. هل هذا هو سبب انشغالك؟» قال أسر.

«نعم، هو كذلك ! لم نخبرك عنه لأنها مفاجأة!» قال والده.
«أود أن أفعل شيئًا للمساعدة أيضًا!» قال أسر.
«عظيم!» قالت والدته. «يقوم عمال البناء بوضع المعدات الكبيرة
الأسبوع القادم، ولكن يمكنك مساعدتنا في زراعة الزهور.»
قال والده : «يمكنك تعليق أجراس الريح أيضًا.»
بدأ أسر وشادى بالمساعدة. لقد كان عملاً شاقًا، لكن الأولاد
استمتعوا. «شكرًا لكم على المساعدة!» قالت والدة أسر. «عندما
يفتح هذا الأسبوع المقبل، يمكنك الحضور واصطحب الجميع في
جولة حول الحديقة.»

في عطلة الأسبوع التالي، قالت الأم : «ميار، لدينا مفاجأة!» سألت
ميار : «ما هي؟»
قال والد ميار : «لا يمكننا إخبارك. إنه سر. فلنذهب جميعًا إلى
الحديقة» استمتع أسر باصطحاب ميار في جولة حول الحديقة
الحسية.
«أنا أحب المكان هنا ! النافورة هي الشيء المفضل لدى!» قالت
ميار.
قالت والدتهما : «شكرًا لك على مساعدتنا يا أسر، ولا تقلق، فنحن
لم ننس حفلتك الموسيقية!»



GUIDE

Interactive Notebook

By a group of supervisors

الصف السادس الابتدائي الفصل الدراسي الأول

للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات

دليل ولي الأمر
Parents ' Guide

CONNECT Plus

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي
تصريف محاسن مع الكتاب



6th
Primary
2025

FIRST TERM

CONTENTS

▶ **PART 1** | El Moasser Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي [التسميع]

Part 1 Dictation on Lessons 4

Part 2 Accumulative assessments on Dictation 12

▶ **PART 2** | A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط

Day 1 Listening skill 15

Day 2 Vocabulary & Language 16

Day 3 Reading skill 25

Day 4 Writing skill 28

Days 5,6&7 Governorates Exams 30



PART

1

El Moasser Homework Interactive Notebook

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي (التسميع)

Part One

Dictation on Lessons

- ١- إملأ على دروس الوحدة
- ٢- أهم المفردات اللغوية في الوحدة
- ٣- تنمية مهارة الكتابة

PART 1 UNIT 1 Dictation on Lessons
إملأ على دروس الوحدة

Write & Practice

Write the meaning → Complete the sentences

Lessons 1 & 2

1. He is untidy, his room is
2. She designed a poster for the event.
3. The kids loved the in the cartoon.
4. We can use or stone to make sculptures.

Lessons 3 & 4

1. A is a liquid but full of oil.
2. Stainless steel is a very metal.
3. When you look into the mirror, it your image.
4. The fireworks made a big in the sky.

Lessons 5, 6 & 7

1. She played the beautifully at the concert.
2. She has a strong voice and she is a key member for the
3. The chef wears while cooking.
4. She wanted to the playlet for the party.
5. She decided to the rooms with balloons and streamers.
6. People wear, which are special clothes for festivals.
7. is my favorite bird.
8. A is a person whose job is playing music.

Part Two

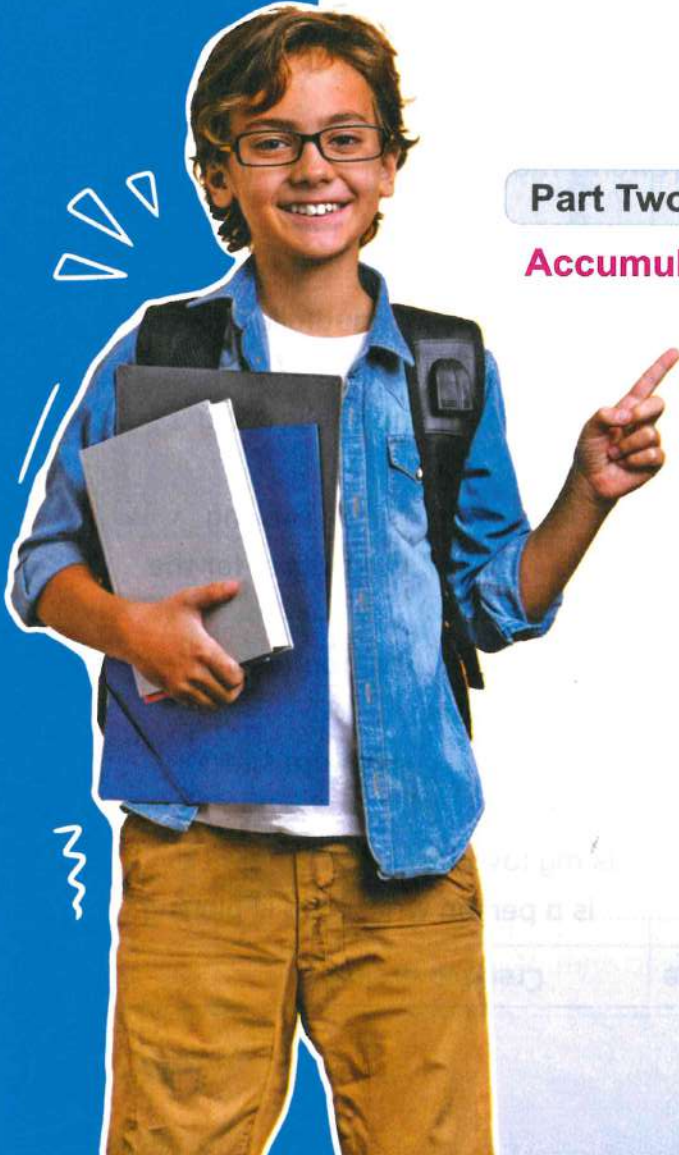
Accumulative assessments on Dictation

تدريب تراكمي على الإملاء

PART 2 Accumulative assessments on Dictation
التدريب التراكمي على الإملاء

أجور المعاصر: اختبار تراكمي من (8) أو (4) لكل طالب، ويتم استخدامه كالتدريب التكميلي

Units 1, 2, 3 & 4	Units 1, 2, 3 & 4
<p>Model 1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. mice 2. remedial 3. neat 4. demonstration 5. sublime 6. outdoor art 7. refrigerator 8. passionate 	<p>Model 2</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. braces 2. communicating 3. poster 4. hard 5. hunter 6. jewels 7. push-up 8. reindeer
<p>Model 3</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. green roofs 2. slide 3. eco-playground 4. awake 5. palace 6. skipper 7. toaster 8. tournament 	<p>Model 4</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. wheelchair 2. advertisement 3. blindness 4. crowd 5. physiotherapist 6. brilliancy 7. comic books 8. crash





I

Write & Practice

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lessons 1 & 2

..... مبدع / إبداعي
 الرسوم المتحركة الحاسوبية
 طين خزفي / صلصال
 غير مريح
 فوضوي / غير مرتب
 مهارات

1. He is untidy, his room is
2. She designed a poster for the event.
3. The kids loved the in the cartoon.
4. We can use or stone to make sculptures.

Lessons 3 & 4

..... لامع
 يعكس
 فرقة / انفجار
 فقاعات
 تمطر
 مرح

1. A is a liquid ball full of air.
2. Stainless steel is a very metal.
3. When you look into the mirror, it your image.
4. The fireworks made a big in the sky.

Lessons 5, 6 & 7

..... كورال [فريق من المنشدين]
 مريلة
 يُعد / يُعدل
 جائزة
 تشيلو [كمنجة كبيرة]
 خشبة المسرح
 طائر الهدهد
 أرباء خاصة
 موسيقار
 جمهور
 موهوب
 يزين

1. She played the beautifully at the concert.
2. She has a strong voice and she is a key member for the
3. The chef wears while cooking.
4. She wanted to the playlist for the party.
5. She decided to the rooms with balloons and streamers.
6. People wear, which are special clothes for festivals.
7. is my favorite bird.
8. A is a person whose job is playing music.



يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraphs
<p>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية</p> <p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>..... طين خزفي / صلصال</p> <p>..... تمثال منحوت</p> <p>..... معرض / عرض</p> <p>..... يظهر</p> <p>..... مبدع / إبداع</p> <p>..... تصميم نماذج</p>	<p>متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية</p> <p>Step 2 Sentences</p> <p>متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية</p> <p>► Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. can - clay - sculptures - <u>We</u> - use - to make.</p> <p>2. works - exhibitions - <u>Creative</u> - appear - the art - in.</p> <p>3. could - plastic - <u>We</u> - use - junk - in - modeling.</p> <p>4. jewelry - used to - beads - are - <u>Colored</u> - make.</p>	<p>Write a paragraph about : "Creative Project"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
<p>مادة الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ</p> <p>أجسام كروية</p> <p>فقاعات</p> <p>يطفو</p> <p>مشهور</p>	<p>5. is - steel - stainless - <u>It</u> - made of - spheres.</p> <p>6. look - bubbles - <u>They</u> - like - are - floating - which.</p> <p>7. is - famous - <u>It</u> - a - sculpture.</p>	<p>"Tall Tree and the Eye"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
<p>مريلة</p> <p>يزين / يزخرف</p> <p>كتلة صلصال</p> <p>مميز / خاص</p> <p>ملابس</p>	<p>8. put - over - clothes - <u>We</u> - an apron - our.</p> <p>9. used - paint - bowl - <u>I</u> - special - to decorate - my.</p> <p>10. started - project - <u>We</u> - our - a lump - of clay - with.</p>	<p>"Your pottery project"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



I

Write & Practice

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	شفرة
.....	آلة / جهاز
.....	مُجفف الشعر
.....	شقة
.....	محمصة خبز كهربية
.....	حليب مخفوق
.....	لِقَاح
.....	مُحرك / موتور
.....	رياضي
.....	لعبة الشطرنج
.....	خلاط
.....	رسوم متحركة

1. is a drink that is often chocolate or vanilla.
2. When the turns, it chops the food.
3. The refrigerator is the best kitchen
4. She used the to dry her hair quickly.
5. I use a for making milkshake.
6. We play at the school chess club.
7. People won't get sick if they have a
8. is a part of a machine that makes something move.

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	كهرباء
.....	مُرُوع / مصدوم
.....	انقطاع التيار الكهربائي
.....	وصلة سلك [كابل]
.....	الأعمال المنزلية
.....	سوء

1. We need a/an to connect the TV.
2. Solar panels generate from sunlight.
3. The boy was to hear the sound of thunder.
4. Because of the, we had no internet or power for TV.

Lessons 5, 6 & 7

.....	عناية - اهتمام
.....	قالب من الطوب
.....	طوق [حول الرقبة]
.....	طفولة
.....	مخالب
.....	برش

1. is a small block for building.
2. The lion's are very sharp.
3. The cat has a with its name and address on it.
4. Cats need a lot of to feel safe.



يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Your bedroom	▶ Write the meaning : غرفة مريح أجهزة الحاسوب الشخصي يشارك واجب منزلي	▶ Reorder the words : 1. is - and - <u>My room</u> - light - comfortable. 2. can - our - in - <u>We</u> - do - homework - our bedroom. 3. share - bedroom - <u>I</u> - my - my brother - with. 4. have - desk - <u>We</u> - a long - our - for - PCS.	▶ Write a paragraph about : "Your bedroom"
Amazing appliances مخرّك - موتور شفرة لِقَاح خلّاط يسخن	5. turns - blades - <u>The motor</u> - the. 6. were - to - <u>Blenders</u> - used - a vaccine - make. 7. blenders - <u>Some</u> - can - food - heat.	"Amazing appliances"
Caring for your cat عناية - اهتمام يداطف - يداعب عمود خدش قطة يعطى	8. your - lots - <u>Give</u> - cat - attention - of. 9. should - cat - your - <u>You</u> - stroke. 10. needs - post - <u>A cat</u> - a scratch.	▶ Write an email about : "Caring for your cat"



I

Write & Practice

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lessons 1 & 2

- أنيق / مرتب
- جدول مواعيد
- تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات
- مُتَنَقِّل
- الطبيعة
- أسقف خضراء
- زى مدرسى موحد
- كافتيريا
- الرنة [نوع من فصيلة الغزلان]
- زلاجات
- بدوى
- مرن

- clean and cool the air of the city.
- She keeps her room and tidy.
- I checked the to see when the next train would arrive.
- is a subject where you study and use computers.
- people don't live in one place.
- are clothes that are the same for every student.
- We had lunch in the today.
- The children were excited to see the at the zoo.

Lessons 3 & 4

- نادى الطهى
- شغوف / متحمس
- يرمى / يصب
- يوم مفتوح
- ممر طبيعى
- يشجع

- To means to persuade someone to do something by giving them support.
- She learned to bake cookies at the
- The music club members are very about music.
- They will fireworks for the celebration.

Lessons 5, 6 & 7

- سام
- ينهار / يسقط
- كاتب
- رحلة طويلة
- شديد الانحدار
- ميدان / ساحة

- The stairs were too for her elderly grandmother.
- The snake is famous for being
- The roof began to during the storm.
- A is a person who wrote about what happened in the past.



يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraphs / Emails
<p>اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية</p> <p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>بدوي خيمة جدول مواعيد مرن مدرسة بدوية</p>	<p>Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. people - live - <u>Nomadic</u> - don't - place - in one. 2. have - lessons - tents - <u>Students</u> - their - in. 3. school - with - <u>Nomadic</u> - travels - families - the. 4. is - school - at - <u>The timetable</u> - flexible - the nomadic.</p>	<p>Write paragraphs about :</p> <p>"Nomadic school"</p> <p>.....</p>
<p>Green roofs</p> <p>أسقف خضراء ينظف مبني الطبيعة تجلب</p>	<p>5. clean - the city - <u>Green</u> - the air - roofs - in. 6. roofs - gardens - <u>Green</u> - are - a building - the top of - on. 7. bring - the city - <u>Green</u> - into - roofs - nature.</p>	<p>"Green roofs"</p> <p>.....</p>
<p>School clubs</p> <p>نادي التربية الفنية دراما يعزف آلة موسيقية</p>	<p>8. makes - relaxed - <u>An art club</u> - you. 9. enjoy - drama - <u>We</u> - going to - club - a. 10. sing - and - <u>We</u> - songs - instruments - play.</p>	<p>Write an email about :</p> <p>"School clubs"</p> <p>.....</p>

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



I

Write & Practice

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	سماعة الأذن
.....	تقويم الأسنان
.....	يتواصل
.....	شعر مجعد
.....	لغة الأصابع
.....	كرسي متحرك

1. She has and her brother has straight hair.
2. He has a because he has problems hearing.
3. She wears to help her teeth get straight.
4. They through sign language.

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	ذراع اصطناعية
.....	مخبز
.....	إعلان
.....	مكعبات / قوالب
.....	رحلة بالحافلة
.....	قصة مضحكة / هزلية

1. I'm reading It makes me laugh.
2. He lost his arm in an accident and now he uses a
3. She buys fresh bread from the
4. She saw many in the magazine.

Lessons 5, 6 & 7

.....	هوايات
.....	أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي
.....	مشاية
.....	مرتاح البال
.....	قطيع [الأفيال]
.....	يزحف / يخبو
.....	يحترم
.....	قائد
.....	صياد
.....	ملف تعريفى
.....	مدخل
.....	قوى

1. Elephants live in a
2. Reading and writing are my favorite
3. is a person who helps people with disabilities.
4. is something that people use to help them walk.
5. The storm was
6. The students should their teacher.
7. A good should listen to the opinions of others.
8. A is a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals.



يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs / Emails متبعا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية أو بريد إلكتروني
Ways to communicate	Write the meaning : رسائل نصية تواصل لغة الإشارة مفيد لغة الأصابع	Reorder the words : 1. can - messages - <u>We</u> - send - text. 2. can - many - <u>We</u> - use - ways - communicate - to. 3. language - a useful - <u>Sign</u> - is - to communicate - way. 4. spelling - a way - <u>Finger</u> - is - of - communicating.	Write paragraphs about : "Ways to communicate"
We are all different	كرسي متحرك مختلف تفويم أسنان سماعة أذن يرتدى	5. uses - <u>He</u> - wheelchair - a. 6. are - all - <u>We</u> - different. 7. wears - <u>She</u> - braces. 8. have - hearing - <u>They</u> - a - aid.	"We are all different"
Your hobbies	مركز تجارى تلتقط صور يستمع موسيقى يحب	9. love - mall - the - <u>I</u> - to - going. 10. like - photos - <u>I</u> - taking. 11. love - music - <u>I</u> - listening - to.	Write an email about : "Your hobbies"



1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

السؤال الأول في الورقة الامتحانية.

A

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Anish Kapoor is a/an
a. painter b. sculptor c. actor d. designer
2. He was born in
a. India b. Egypt c. China d. England
3. He moved to London to study
a. English b. engineering c. music d. art
4. He likes to use new and interesting
a. sizes b. colors c. shapes d. tools

B

1. There are people in my family.
a. fifteen b. five c. fifty d. forty
2. The two sisters have the age.
a. same b. some c. different d. whole
3. The other sister wants to be a/an
a. vet b. engineer c. doctor d. actress
4. My father is a
a. teacher b. doctor c. fisherman d. farmer

C

1. We are not the same. Everyone is
a. same b. difficult c. bad d. different
2. Some of us are good at art and others are good at
a. painting b. swimming c. music d. sports
3. I'm tall, but Seleem is
a. small b. good c. short d. tall
4. Yara has hair.
a. curly b. brown c. dark d. blond



تدريب تراكمي على الإملاء

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Units 1, 2 & 3

Model A

1. mice
2. nomadic
3. neat
4. demonstration
5. collapse
6. outdoor art
7. refrigerator
8. passionate

- ١. مرن
- ٢. نادي الطهي
- ٣. مدير المدرسة / المسئول
- ٤. مجتمع
- ٥. محكمة
- ٦. مصدوم
- ٧. وصلة سلك [كابل]
- ٨. يصلح

Units 1, 2, 3 & 4

Model A

1. braces
2. communicating
3. poster
4. herd
5. hunter
6. jewels
7. push-up
8. reindeer

- ١. عجز / إعاقة
- ٢. لغة الإشارة
- ٣. كوع متحرك
- ٤. يحترم
- ٥. قائد
- ٦. الرسوم المتحركة
- ٧. يرمج / برنامج
- ٨. يقنع

Model B

1. green roofs
2. sleds
3. eco-playground
4. awake
5. palace
6. disappear
7. toaster
8. tournament

- ١. جدول مواعيد
- ٢. نادي الموسيقى
- ٣. يوم مفتوح
- ٤. شديد الانحدار
- ٥. كاتب
- ٦. لامع
- ٧. مدرسة داخلية
- ٨. مخطوطات

Model B

1. wheelchair
2. advertisement
3. kindness
4. crawl
5. physiotherapist
6. brilliantly
7. comic books
8. crash

- ١. سماعه الأذن
- ٢. يتخيل
- ٣. ذراع اصطناعية
- ٤. قوى / ذو نفوذ
- ٥. مرتاح البال
- ٦. إبداع
- ٧. سيء
- ٨. سام

PART

2

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

(الامتحان بين يديك)

اليوم الأول

Listening Skill

عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجة في الامتحان.

اليوم الثاني

Vocabulary & Language

طريقة جديدة وعملية جدًا لمراجعة كل كلمات المنهج.

Day 1
Listening skill

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

السؤال الأول من الوحدة الامتحانية
نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

A

- Anish Kapoor is a/an
a. painter b. sculptor c. actor d. designer
- He was born in
a. India b. Egypt c. China d. England
- He moved to London to study
a. English b. engineering c. music d. art
- He likes to use new and interesting
a. sizes b. colors c. shapes d. tools

B

- There are people in my family.
a. fifteen b. five c. fifty d. forty
- The two sisters have the age.
a. some b. same c. different d. whole
- The other sister wants to be a/an
a. vet b. engineer c. doctor d. actress
- My father is a
a. teacher b. doctor c. fisherman d. farmer

C

- We are not the same. Everyone is
a. some b. difficult c. bad d. different
- Some of us are good at art and others are good at
a. painting b. swimming c. music d. sports
- I'm tall, but Saleem is
a. small b. good c. short d. tall
- Yara has hair.
a. curly b. brown c. dark d. blond

15

Day 2
Vocabulary & Language

مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات والمفردات الجديدة

I Vocabulary

creative	إبداعي - إبداع	beads	حبات الخرز
exhibition	معرض - عرض	sculpture	فن الصلص - تمثال منحوت
junk modeling	التصميم باستخدام مواد قديمة	outdoor art	الفن الخارجي
collage	اصطناع الصورة الجديدة من المصاحبات	computer animation	الرسوم المتحركة الحاسوبية
pottery	فن صناعة الأواني الفخارية	uncomfortable	ألم مرتاح
messy	فوضوي - غير مرتب	award	جائزة
talented	موهوب	perform	أؤدي - يعرض
lump of clay	كتلة صلصال	stage	خديعة المسرح
pottery wheel	عملة فخارية	choir	كورال (الفرق من الممثلين)
apron	معلقة	edit	تحرير - تعديل
lin	فن (الخزف)	audience	جمهور (المصنف - المستمع)
decorate	زين - زخرف	flash	وميض - ومضة
craft	sculptor	نحات	
cheer	تفويج - يهتف - يهتج	spheres	أجسام كروية
breath	نفس	bubbles	فقاعات
bong = blast	ارتداد - انفجار	bright	أبيض
verse	بيت (من الشعر)	reflect	يتمكس
clay	طين - خزف - صلصال	slight	متنازل - متواضع
design	التصميم - تصميم	explode	يتفجر

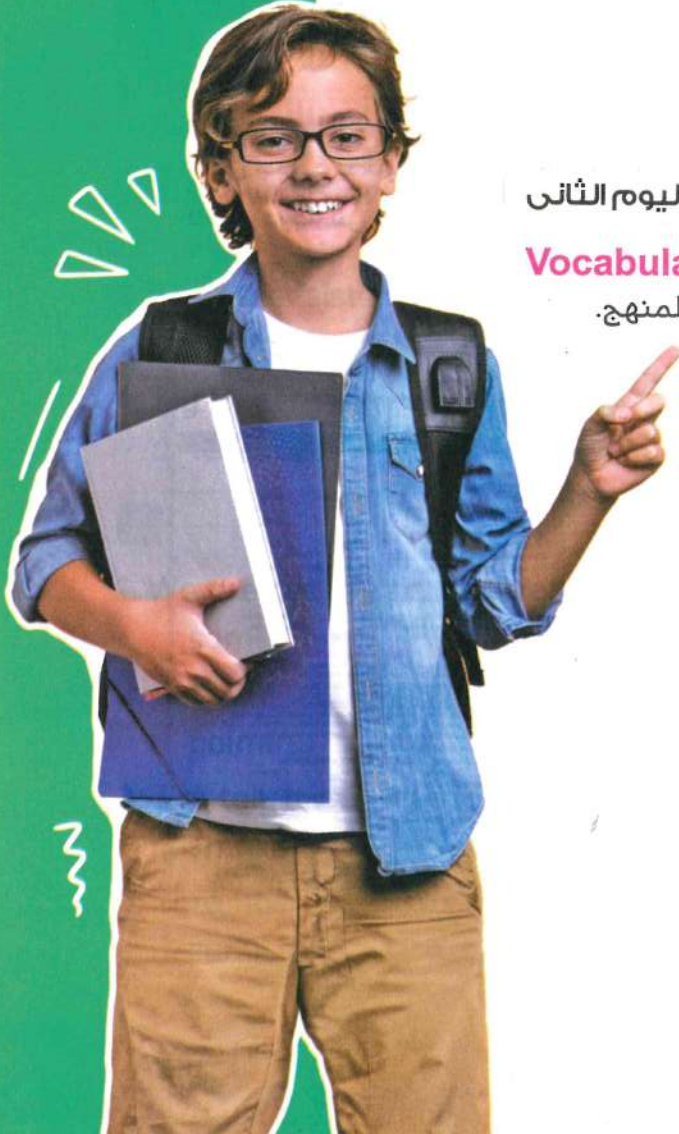
Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- To make jewelry, you can use different colored
a. pens b. rulers c. beads d. erasers
- You could use plastic bottles or in junk modeling.
a. cardboard b. clouds c. sunlight d. food

16



Day 3 Reading skill

★ Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

interesting - cameras - sculptures - tourists - Egyptian

I went to Cairo last week. I went by bus. I went with my friends. We took many things with us such as [1] _____, mobiles and food. We met many [2] _____ there. We visited the [3] _____ Museum. We could see many items there. We saw the [4] _____ which the ancient Egyptian craftsmen made. It was really an amazing visit. We were happy.

movie - speaking - newspaper - opinion - have

Sherif: Mom, I'd really like to understand English better!
 Mom: What do you think about [1] _____ English all day with me?
 Sherif: I don't know, Mom. In my [2] _____, it might be difficult.
 Mom: What about speaking English while we [3] _____ our lunch then?
 Sherif: To me, that's a much better idea!
 Mom: Hooray! What about watching a/an English [4] _____ this evening?
 Sherif: I think that could work well. There's a fantastic movie I'd like to see. Thanks, Mom!

★ Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl. First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy. When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong. Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 1. The writer used special _____ to decorate the bowl.
 a. jewelry b. shells c. paint d. shapes

Day 4 Writing skill

★ Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. activities - painting - My - and - favorite - are - reading.
 2. you - show - enjoy - Did - the - school?
 3. help - Don't - you - worry - let - me.
 4. is - painting - at - She - good - not.
 5. with - you - can - lids - What - make?
 6. to fix - the robot - I - my - programmed - car.
 7. on - juice - There - table - is - the.
 8. swimming - sea - in - We - the - love.
 9. is - painting - at - She - good.
 10. and - Vegetables - are - fruits - good - health - for.
 11. books - love - I - reading - comic.
 12. milkshake - She - a blending - to - uses - make.
 13. prefer - I - things - making - my hands - with.
 14. don't - people - nomadic - one place - in - live - Why?
 15. special - have - Actors - the play - costumes - for.

اليوم الثالث

Reading Skill

* عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجات في الامتحان.

اليوم الرابع

Writing Skill

* عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على افضل درجة في الامتحان.

اليوم الخامس والسادس والسابع

١٦ اختبار من مختلف المحافظات.

Days 5, 6 & 7 16 Governorates Exams

1 Cairo Governorate

★ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We moved into a new _____.
 a. villa b. village c. apartment d. beach

2. We moved _____ ago.
 a. week b. month c. day d. year

3. I have a new _____.
 a. bedroom b. library c. shop d. car

4. My new room is very _____.
 a. bad b. thing c. comfortable d. dark

★ Read and complete the text with the words from the box.
 history - granddad - bricks - ago - since

The house we live in is old. It's made from [1] _____ and stone. It has three bedrooms. Father told us the [2] _____ of the house. Our great [3] _____ built it more than hundred years [4] _____.

★ Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl. First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy. When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong. Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 1. The writer used special _____ to decorate the bowl.
 a. jewelry b. shells c. paint d. shapes

2. The text is generally about _____.
 a. making clothes b. a pottery project
 c. a trip to a place d. cool

3. The opposite of the underlined word "messy" is "____".
 a. wet b. clean c. hot d. lucky

★ Answer the following questions.
 4. What did the writer want to make?
 5. How do they keep their clothes clean?



1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

السؤال الأول في الورقة الامتحانية.

A

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Anish Kapoor is a/an
a. painter b. sculptor c. actor d. designer
2. He was born in
a. India b. Egypt c. China d. England
3. He moved to London to study
a. English b. engineering c. music d. art
4. He likes to use new and interesting
a. sizes b. colors c. shapes d. tools

B

1. There are people in my family.
a. fifteen b. five c. fifty d. forty
2. The two sisters have the age.
a. same b. some c. different d. whole
3. The other sister wants to be a/an
a. vet b. engineer c. doctor d. actress
4. My father is a
a. teacher b. doctor c. fisherman d. farmer

C

1. We are not the same. Everyone is
a. same b. difficult c. bad d. different
2. Some of us are good at art and others are good at
a. painting b. swimming c. music d. sports
3. I'm tall, but Seleem is
a. small b. good c. short d. tall
4. Yara has hair.
a. curly b. brown c. dark d. blond



I Vocabulary

Unit 1

creative	مبدع - إبداعي	beads	حبات الخرز
exhibition	معرض - عرض	sculpture	فن النحت - تمثال منحوت
junk modeling	تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة	outdoor art	الفن الخارجي
collage	صناعة الأعمال الفنية من الملصقات	computer animation	الرسوم المتحركة الحاسوبية
pottery	فن صناعة الأواني الفخارية	uncomfortable	غير مريح
messy	فوضوي - غير مرتب	award	جائزة
talented	موهوب	perform	يؤدي - يعرض
lump of clay	كتلة صلصال	stage	خشبة المسرح
pottery wheel	عجلة فخارية	choir	كورال [فريق من المنشدين]
apron	مريلة	edit	يحرر - يعدل
kiln	فرن [للخزف]	audience	جمهور [المسرح - السينما]
decorate	يزين - يزخرف	flash	وميض - ومضة
craft	حرفة	sculptor	نحات
cheer	يهتف - يشجع	spheres	أجسام كروية
breath	نفس	bubbles	فقاعات
bang = blast	فرقعة - انفجار	bright	لامع
verse	بيت [من الشعر]	reflect	يعكس
clay	طين خزفي - صلصال	sight	منظر - مشهد
design	تصميم - يصمم	explode	ينفجر



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائي

على المفردات اللغوية



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- To make jewelry, you can use different colored
a. pens b. rulers c. beads d. erasers
- You could use plastic bottles or in junk modeling.
a. cardboard b. clouds c. sunlight d. food

3. A is a person who makes sculptures.

- a. farmer b. teacher c. sculptor d. driver

4. When something is, it's not following a pattern.

- a. regular b. fixed c. irregular d. straight

• Unit 2

cartoons	رسوم متحركة	hairdryer	مُجفف الشعر
sporty	رياضي	toaster	محمصة خبز كهربية
comic books	كتب مصورة مضحكة	refrigerator	ثلاجة
swap	يتبادل	blender	خلاط
appliance	آلة - جهاز	power outage = power cut	انقطاع التيار الكهربى
blade	شَفرة	programme	بُرمج / برنامج
motor	مُحرِّك - موتور	battery	بطارية
power socket	مقبس التيار	robot	إنسان آلى
extension cable	وصلة سلك [كابل]	chores	الأعمال المنزلية
interactive whiteboard	السيبورة التفاعلية	collar	طوق [حول الرقبة]
electricity	الكهرباء	claws	مخالب
break down	يتعطل	florist	بائع الزهور
shocked	مُروع / مصدوم	fertilizer	سماد
stroke	يلاطف / يداعب	scratch post	عمود خدش
sharpen	يُخد	curious	فضولى - محب للاستطلاع
spray	يرش	brick	قالب من الطوب
chess	لعبة الشطرنج	attic	سقيفة [غرفة علوية للتخزين]
push-up	تمارين الضغط		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My bedroom is very big, so I it with my brother.

- a. chat b. share c. spend d. finish

2. is a quite difficult board game.

- a. Taekwondo b. Tennis c. Chess d. Volleyball

3. We need to use electric appliances in our homes.
 a. electricity b. wood c. glass d. ice
4. My sister helps my mom do the She usually washes the dishes.
 a. homework b. chores c. sport d. research

• Unit 3

green roofs	أسقف خضراء	scream	بصرخ / صرخة
nomadic	بدوى	boarding school	مدرسة داخلية
sleds	زلجات	neat	أنيق - مرتب
mobile	مُتَنَقِّل	nomadic school	مدرسة بدوية
cycle	يركب دراجة	timetable	جدول مواعيد
school uniform	زى مدرسى موحد	flexible	مرن
reindeer	الرتة [نوع من فصيلة الغزلان]	nature	الطبيعة
cooking club	نادى الطهى	passionate	شغوف / متحمس
music club	نادى الموسيقى	art club	نادى التربية الفنية
principal	مدير المدرسة / المسئول	tournament	دورة رياضية [بطولة]
demonstration	إيضاح / عرض	eco-playground	ملعب صديق للبيئة
bridge	جسر - كوبرى	open day	يوم مفتوح
collapse	ينهار - يسقط	repair = fix	يصلح
steep	شديد الانحدار	crash	تحطم - اصطدام
society	مجتمع	scripts	مخطوطات
experiences	خبرات حياتية	poisonous	سام
palace	قصر	scribe	كاتب
court	محكمة		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى

على المفردات اللغوية



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Green are gardens on the top of the building.
 a. floors b. steps c. pavements d. roofs
- There are flowers and on the roof!
 a. plants b. plans c. planets d. planes
- A/An is a playground that does not harm the environment.
 a. solar panel b. street
 c. stony playground d. eco-playground

4. Playing chess makes me It's wonderful.

- a. happy b. worried c. sad d. bored

Unit 4

glasses	نظارة	braces	تقويم الأسنان [دعامات للأسنان]
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	hearing aid	سماعة الأذن
disability	عجز - إعاقة	sign language	لغة الإشارة
lip-reading	قراءة الشفاه	mean = unkind	بخيل / قاس
finger spelling	لغة الأصابع	communicating	التواصل
text messages	رسائل نصية	prosthetic arm	ذراع اصطناعية
comic books	قصص مضحكة	advertisement	إعلان
kindness	عطف	poster	ملصق - إعلان
movable elbow	كوع متحرك	bricks	مكعبات - قوالب
herd	قطيع	hunter	صياد
profile	ملف تعريفى	comment	تعليق
cerebral palsy	الشلل الدماغي	crawl	يزحف - يحبو
powerful	قوى / ذو نفوذ	leader	قائد
entrance	مدخل	physiotherapist	أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي
respect	يحترم	personal	شخصي
hobbies	هوايات	walker	مشاية
relieved	مرتاح البال	snack bar	مطعم الوجبات الخفيفة



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى

على المفردات اللغوية



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I like reading because they are funny.
a. video games b. robots c. comic books d. cartoons
- Having a arm helps him with his disability.
a. weak b. prosthetic c. healthy d. bad
- If someone is, the students should ask their teachers for help.
a. kind b. mean c. clever d. smart
- Her hair isn't, it's straight.
a. brown b. curly c. black d. dark

II Language

Unit 1

1 Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

► Formation :

Statement الجملة الخبرية → **If / When** إذا / عندما + **present simple, ... present simple / can + inf.**
ex. - If you **mix** blue and red, you **get** purple.

If / When + مضارع بسيط + **imperative** صيغة الامر .

ex. - If someone **tells** you a secret, **don't tell** anyone.

Wh- Q. السؤال بـ [أداة استفهام] → **Q.W. + do / does + subj. + inf. + if / when + ... مضارع بسيط ?**
ex. - What **do** you do **if / when** you feel sad?

2 Prepositional phrase شبه الجملة

• Prepositions can include :

after	بعد	behind	خلف	in	في	under	تحت	with	مع
before	قبل	for	ل / لمدة	into	داخل	through	خلال	on	على

► **ex.** He is always tired **after** the work days.



Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- What you do if you feel sad ?
 a. did b. are c. do d. were
- When she carefully to the teacher, she understands.
 a. listens b. listening c. listened d. listen
- If you hard, you can get good grades.
 a. studies b. study c. studying d. studied
- If you want to succeed, hard.
 a. studies b. studying c. study d. studied

5. I looked my bed, but I couldn't find anything.
 a. under b. before c. off d. of
6. going home, I go to the supermarket.
 a. Under b. In c. Before d. Behind
7. The park my house is beautiful.
 a. off b. behind c. for d. of

Unit 2

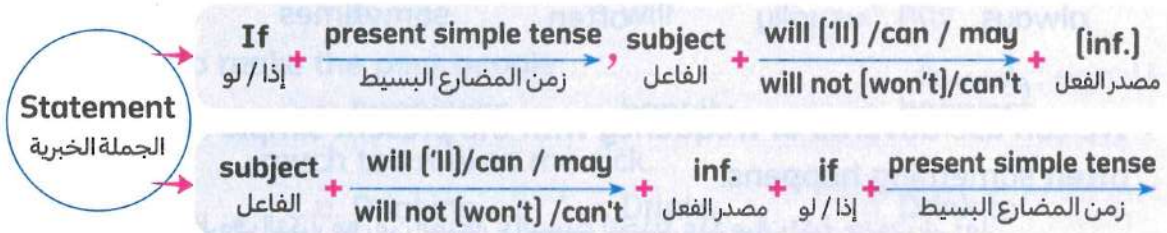
1 The first conditional : الحالة الشرطية الأولى :

► **Use:** الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about future situations.

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لتحدث عن مواقف مستقبلية.

► **Formation:** التكوين



ex. - I will arrive early if the bus comes on time.

2 Phrasal verbs : الأفعال الاصطلاحية :

A phrasal verb is a verb followed by a preposition, such as up, over, in, on, away.

Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية	• mop up	• cut out	• pick up
	• hang up	• put out	• tidy up
	• put away	• clean up	

ex. - I will tidy up my room.



Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If I have enough money, I buy a new bike.
 a. was b. will c. would d. am
2. If she late, we won't go to the cinema.
 a. comes b. come c. will come d. came

3. You will sick if you eat a lot of chocolate.
 a. be b. being c. been d. to be
4. Mazen to your party if you don't invite him.
 a. didn't come b. can't come c. don't come d. isn't coming
5. You need to pick your toys from the floor.
 a. under b. for c. up d. in
6. My mom up the clothes after she irons them.
 a. hangs b. picks c. mops d. cleans
7. We will our house after the party.
 a. put out b. hang up c. tidy up d. pick up

Unit 3

1 Adverbs of frequency : ظروف التكرار :



always



usually



often



sometimes



never

► Usage : الاستخدام

- We can use **adverbs of frequency** with the present simple to say **how often** something happens.

يمكننا أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط لتحديد عدد مرات تكرار حدوث شيء ما.

ex. - I am never late for school. - She often walks to school.

2 Using **make**

► Formation : التكوين

Subject + make(s) + object + adjective صفة .

ex. - I have some friends. → - I'm happy.

= My friends **make me** happy.

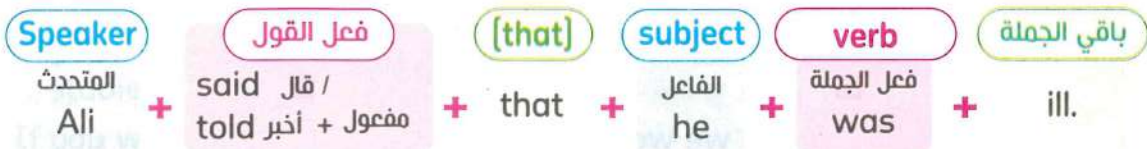
3 Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

يستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر لأخبار بما قاله شخص ما.

- We change the tense from the present, or future, to the past.

نقوم بتغيير الأزمنة من المضارع أو المستقبل إلى الماضي.

► Statement : الجملة الخبرية





Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- He walks to school. He always takes the bus.
a. never b. always c. sometimes d. usually
- He late for school.
a. were always b. is always c. always are d. always is
- It's sunny and hot in summer.
a. sometimes b. never c. always d. hardly ever
- Sarah asked how they get to school.
a. would b. will c. are d. can
- Basel said that he going to the museum.
a. was b. is c. will d. has
- He tries to make the poor people
a. happy b. happiness c. happily d. happiest
- much tea makes me sick.
a. Drink b. Drinking c. Drinks d. Drink to

Unit 4

1 Reported questions الأسئلة في الكلام غير المباشر.

A Yes / No question → السؤال بـ "هل"

- ex. - Ashraf said, "Does he have any pets ?"
- Ashraf **asked** if he **had** any pets.

B Wh-Question → السؤال بكلمة استفهام

- ex. - "What are you doing ?" Adam said.
- Adam **asked** what I **was** doing.

2 Superlatives صيغة التفضيل

A Short adjectives → الصفات القصيرة

- ex. - The giraffe is **the tallest** animal in the world.

B Long adjectives → الصفات الطويلة

- ex. - Butterflies are **the most beautiful** creatures.
- Today is **the best** day at school.



Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. January is often the month in Egypt.
a. colder b. cold c. cold as d. coldest
2. Hatem is student in the class.
a. tall b. the tallest c. taller than d. the tall
3. This is the chef at the restaurant.
a. good as b. better c. best d. good
4. It was the vacation.
a. worst b. worse c. bad d. badly
5. She asked me if worked from home.
a. we b. her c. I d. his
6. The officer asked me who the bag.
a. finding b. finds c. found d. find
7. Mrs Elham asked me if I to the library.
a. was going b. am going c. will go d. go

احرص على اقتناء كتب



فى اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق



السؤال الثاني في الورقة الامتحانية.

★ Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

A interesting - cameras - sculptures - tourists - Egyptian

I went to Cairo last week. I went by bus. I went with my friends. We took many things with us such as [1], mobiles and food. We met many [2] there. We visited the [3] Museum. We could see many items there. We saw the [4] which the ancient Egyptian craftsmen made. It was really an amazing visit. We were happy.

B movie - speaking - newspaper - opinion - have

Sherif : Mom, I'd really like to understand English better!

Mom : What do you think about [1] English all day with me ?

Sherif : I don't know, Mom. In my [2], it might be difficult.

Mom : What about speaking English while we [3] our lunch then ?

Sherif : To me, that's a much better idea !

Mom : Hooray ! What about watching a/an English [4] this evening ?

Sherif : I think that could work well. There's a fantastic movie I'd like to see. Thanks, Mom !

السؤال الثالث في الورقة الامتحانية.

★ Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl. First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy. When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong. Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The writer used special to decorate the bowl.

a. jewelry

b. shells

c. paint

d. shapes

2. The text is generally about ".....".
 - a. Making clothes
 - b. A pottery project
 - c. A trip to a place
 - d. Cool weather
3. The opposite of the underlined word "messy" is
 - a. wet
 - b. tidy
 - c. hot
 - d. luckily

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What did the writer want to make ?
.....

5. How do they keep their clothes clean ?
.....

 **The Reader.**

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser's grandma was waiting at the school gate. [.....]
2. Asser found muddy boots in the car. [.....]
3. Mrs Azza gave Asser a Braille book. [.....]
4. Mayar wanted to listen to the radio. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did Asser go with Shady ?
.....

2. Why did Asser go to the garage ?
.....

B. A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser saw his grandma waiting at the school gate. [.....]
2. Mayar's teacher came to talk to her mom. [.....]
3. The children stayed at grandma's house until the afternoon. [.....]
4. The fountain is Mayar's favorite thing in the park. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did grandma come to pick Asser and Mayar up ?
.....

2. What did grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar ?
.....

C. A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mom offered to make cookies for Asser and Mayar. [.....]
2. Asser went to the club to get his football. [.....]
3. Mrs Azza told the grandma that Mayar's book had words in Braille. [.....]
4. Asser's parents were making a sensory garden. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. What did mom tell Mayar not to forget ?

.....

2. Why didn't Asser ask his mom about the concert ?

.....

D A. Read and write YES or No.

1. Asser and Shady sat down by some tall trees in the park. [.....]

2. Asser's mom and dad were making a playground with a sensory garden. [.....]

3. Mom and dad learned Braille when Mayar was a baby. [.....]

4. Asser went to the garage to get his guitar. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who was Mrs Azza ?

.....

2. What was Mayar listening to in the car ?

.....

E A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mayar was carrying a game. [.....]

2. Asser saw his grandma at the school gate. [.....]

3. Asser's mom is busy. [.....]

4. Mom and dad were sad to see Mayar's new book. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who was Mrs Azza ?

.....

2. Where did grandma take Asser and Mayar ?

.....

F A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. When Asser saw grandma, he smiled and hugged her. [.....]

2. The shovel was covered in ice. [.....]

3. Mayar wanted to listen to the audiobook in the car. [.....]

4. There is a fountain in the sensory garden. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who was Shady ?

.....

2. What were Asser's parents doing on the other side of the park ?

.....



6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

السؤال السادس في الورقة الامتحانية.

1. activities – painting – My – and – favorite – are – reading.

2. you – show – enjoy – Did – the – school ?

3. help – Don't – you – worry, – let – me.

4. is – painting – at – She – good – not.

5. with – you – can – lids – What – make ?

6. to fix – the robot – I – my – programmed – car.

7. on – juice – There – table – is – the.

8. swimming – sea – in – We – the – love.

9. is – painting – at – She – good.

10. and – Vegetables – are – fruits – good – health – for.

11. books – love – I – reading – comic.

12. milkshake – She – a blender – to – uses – make.

13. prefer – I – things – making – my hands – with.

14. don't – people – nomadic – one place – in – live – Why ?

15. special – have – Actors – the play – costumes – for.



Important topics

أهم الفقرات الإنشائية البريد الإلكتروني [للمزيد من التدريب على الموضوعات في نهاية كتاب الشرح]

"Why is electricity important"

In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop. I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening. It's also important in the kitchen. We couldn't use our electric kettle without electricity or our blender or our refrigerator.

"Your school week"

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in grade 6. I like my school.

We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

From mahdy22@gmail.com

To essam@yahoo.com

Subject My bedroom

Dear Essam,

We moved into a new apartment last month. I'm happy because I have a new room. My new room is large, light and more comfortable. I share it with my brother Hassan. We are always good friends. We have a long desk for PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. When we finish our homework, we can play computer games in our room. We watch cartoons with our friends, too.

Yours,
Mahdy

From malek@gmail.com

To anas@gmail.com

Subject Green roofs

Dear Anas,

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school! The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green roofs for the school in Egypt. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air. They are great for the environment. This project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden.

Yours,
Malek

"A description of a friend"

Tom is my best friend. He is 12 years old. He is from England. He is English. He is tall and wears glasses. He has short brown hair. He has got big green eyes. He can play football, but he can't play tennis. He loves reading and always has a book in his hand. His favorite color is yellow. His favorite food is pizza. He also likes pets. He has got a small puppy. He is friendly and nice. He is always happy.

"A report about a creative project"

Enter our fun new competition and show us how creative you are! We want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send us their creative work. Your work will appear in a big art exhibition in the city museum. There are so many different ways you can express yourself. You could send us a painting, a photo, a poem, or a story. Junk modeling is an example. In junk modeling, you can make things with a cardboard box, plastic bottles and lids. Use your creative and design skills to build a rocket, a ship, a car, or a house.



1 Cairo Governorate

Ain Shams Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We moved into a new
a. villa b. village c. apartment d. beach
- We moved a ago.
a. week b. month c. day d. year
- I have a new
a. bedroom b. library c. shop d. car
- My new room is very
a. bad b. tiring c. comfortable d. dark

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

history – granddad – bricks – ago – since

The house we live in is old. It's made from [1] and stone. It has three bedrooms. Father told us the [2] of the house. Our great [3] built it more than hundred years [4]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl. First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy. When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong. Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The writer used special to decorate the bowl.
a. jewelry b. shells c. paint d. shapes
- The text is generally about
a. making clothes b. a pottery project
c. a trip to a place d. coal
- The opposite of the underlined word "messy" is ".....".
a. wet b. clean c. hot d. lucky

B. Answer the following questions.

- What did the writer want to make ?
.....
- How do they keep their clothes clean ?
.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser and Shady had fun in the park. [.....]
2. Mayar has a concert next week. [.....]
3. Asser saw his dad's shovel covered in mud. [.....]
4. The shovel was covered in ice. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Mayar have to read ?
.....
2. Where did Asser and Shady go ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If you heat sugar, it
a. melt b. melting c. melts d. molten
2. When my cat sees a bee, she to catch it.
a. try b. tried c. tries d. trying
3. You can make green if you blue and yellow.
a. mix b. mixes c. mixed d. mixing
4. Our home is the heart is.
a. which b. where c. why d. what
5. Plants die if you them.
a. watered b. don't water c. water d. is watering
6. He went to the beach a sunny day.
a. on b. at c. in d. of

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. make - for - he - choir - Did - the - costumes ?
.....
2. didn't - to - He - talk - yesterday - the interviewer.
.....
3. up - Nada - cleaning - kitchen - is - the.
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

" My house "

Guiding elements :

bedrooms - living room - bathrooms - comfortable - share - desk

.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Aya started a new
 a. club b. skill c. school d. team
2. Aya thinks club is great.
 a. reading b. music c. art d. cooking
3. Last week, they made cookies for Eid Al-Fitr.
 a. usual b. traditional c. special d. healthy
4. This week, they are going to make lemon
 a. milkshake b. cookies c. juice d. cake

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

mechanics - sure - florists - plants - assistants

Do you like plants ? You should buy one. You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets, [1], and garden centers. These are stores that sell many different [2], It might be best to buy from a garden center as the [3] know how to look after the plants and they can give you some useful advice. Make [4] you know what your plant is called, so you can find out more about it.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Yesterday it was raining, so we all stayed at home and cleaned the house. Mom and Dad gave us some chores as a challenge. We all had one hour to do our chores. My brother and I had to tidy up our bedrooms. I had to hang up my clothes, because I sometimes leave them on the chair. My brother had to pick up his books and put them back on the shelf. Dad put out the trash. Mom cleaned up the kitchen and put away the dishes. But then, my little sister tried to mop up the juice from the floor. She spilt her drink, so the floor is very wet! We all helped to clean it up - just in time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The best title for the text is ".....".
 a. Weekends b. A challenge c. A cold day d. Our school
2. The underlined word spilt means.....
 a. drank b. dropped c. moved d. cleaned
- 3..... put out the trash.
 a. Mom b. Dad c. Sister d. Brother

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What did the brother do alone ?

5. Did they succeed in the challenge ?

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Grandma came to the park to pick up Asser and Mayar. [.....]
2. The family all got on the bus to go home. [.....]
3. Mom told Asser to remember his guitar for music club. [.....]
4. Shady and his dad invited Asser to the park. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Asser see outside the garage ?
.....
2. How did Asser feel about his concert ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sami always puts his guitar the door.
a. on b. behind c. in d. under
2. They said they going to Alexandria.
a. have b. were c. will d. are
3. Running makes me healthy.
a. feel b. feels c. felt d. feeling
4. If it's hot tomorrow, I'll chocolate ice cream.
a. makes b. make c. making d. made
5. I go to the park a sunny day.
a. at b. in c. on d. by
6. You need to pick your toys from the floor.
a. under b. for c. in d. up

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. watch - I - usually - TV - cartoons - on.
.....
2. creative - you - do - What - like - activities ?
.....
3. can't - battery - She - car - change - the.
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

"Your opinion about the school clubs"

Guiding elements :

- Which club would you like to go to ?
- How does it make you feel ?
- Why do you like it ?
- What do you learn in it ?

.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We use electricity for our houses.
 a. selling b. buying c. lighting d. cleaning
- Blenders and refrigerators are all
 a. appliances b. motors c. places d. blades
- Some people have electric
 a. cars b. chairs c. TV d. planes
- Bus need electricity.
 a. conductors b. drivers c. stops d. stations

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

poem - sculpture - interesting - wood - competition

Ehab : Hello, Kareem. Did you go to the art club today ?

Kareem : No, I didn't.

Ehab : Did you hear about the art [1] ?

Kareem : Oh, wow. That's very [2]

Ehab : What are you going to make for the competition ?

Kareem : I think about making a [3]

Ehab : What material are you going to use ?

Kareem : I like to use [4]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Every winter, thousands of people from every part of Europe, America and Asia come to spend their holidays in our great country, Egypt. They are tourists who come to enjoy the fine weather and sunshine of Egypt when it is very cold in their countries. They like to visit Luxor and Aswan. They like to see the ancient treasures of Egypt, so they like to visit the Egyptian Museum. They also visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. Before they return home, they like to go to Khan El Khalili to buy some souvenirs and presents to their friends.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Most tourists usually visit Egypt in
 a. summer b. fall c. spring d. winter
- It's very in their countries in winter.
 a. hot b. cold c. sunny d. dry
- Tourists like to visit the Egyptian
 a. Museum b. villages c. river d. sea

B. Answer the following questions.

- Why do tourists come to Egypt ?

- What do tourists buy from Khan El Kalili ?

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser's grandma was waiting at the school gate. [.....]
2. Mayar's book has words in sign language. [.....]
3. Asser plays the guitar in the school concert. [.....]
4. Grandma and children made a cake together. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Asser see when he opened the car trunk ?
.....
2. What is Mayar's favorite thing in the sensory garden ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sally is her friends now.
a. meets b. meet c. met d. meeting
2. If I sleep early, I happy in the morning.
a. feel b. feels c. felt d. feeling
3. Nada puts her shoes the door.
a. in b. behind c. after d. before
4. She mops the water from the floor.
a. in b. to c. up d. of
5. He late for school.
a. is always b. are always c. always is d. always are
6. If we have fruit and milk, we a milkshake.
a. making b. made c. will make d. makes

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. activity - favorite - pottery - is - making - His.
.....
2. live - in - Do - apartment - you - an ?
.....
3. can - We - my - share - books - today.
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

"My new apartment"

Guiding elements :

live - Alexandria - family - four rooms - living room - balcony

.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali and Noha were on school vacation with their
 a. friends b. parents c. uncles d. aunts
2. Ali was playing with his new
 a. rabbit b. toy c. kitten d. puppy
3. Ali found some in the hole.
 a. books b. clothes c. pens d. paper
4. Ali felt very
 a. happy b. curious c. worried d. sorry

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

clean - students - air - roofs - building

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school. The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green [1] for schools in Egypt. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a [2] They bring nature into the city. They also [3] and cool the air. That means that they are great for the environment. The project teaches [4] and teachers how to plant a roof garden.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Omar's class worked on a pottery project at school this week. They started with a lump of clay, and they chose what to make. Omar wanted to make a bowl. First, the teacher showed them how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was their turn. They put on aprons over their clothes. When Omar put his clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was **difficult**, and he got messy. When his bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong. Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. They waited for the bowl to be cool, and then Omar used special paint to decorate his bowl.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The teacher showed his students how to use a pottery
 a. bowl b. lump c. clothes d. wheel
2. The text is generally about
 a. a school trip b. building a house
 c. making pottery d. making clothes
3. The opposite of "**difficult**" is
 a. hard b. easy c. strong d. cool

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What did the students put over their clothes ?

5. What did Omar do after his bowl became cool ?

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser saw his father waiting at the school gate. [.....]
2. Mayar can read Braille books. [.....]
3. Asser saw his father's shovel. It was covered with mud. [.....]
4. A sensory garden is a place where you can catch fish. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did Asser and Shady go ?

.....

2. What was Asser's parents' secret ?

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hala learned how to iron her own clothes.
a. quickly b. quick c. quicker d. quickest
2. Omar usually push-ups in his room because he wants to get stronger.
a. do b. doing c. did d. does
3. It is raining outside, we must take our umbrellas.
a. if b. because c. so d. when
4. He asked when the school
a. starts b. starting c. start d. started
5. If she, she will catch the train.
a. hurried b. hurry c. hurries d. hurrying
6. It is messy here. We need to clean the kitchen.
a. up b. out c. away d. over

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. making - my hand - I - things - prefer - with.

.....

2. does - the doctor - on - What - the bite - put ?

.....

3. important - most - is - lighting - for - Electricity.

.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

"My big house"

Guiding elements :

living room - bedroom - kitchen - bathroom - garden

.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Electricity is most in our free time.
a. bad b. useful c. tired d. messy
- I do homework on my
a. room b. bedroom c. laptop d. TV
- I play video with my brother.
a. desks b. games c. films d. plays
- I love to watch television with my
a. friends b. class c. grandma d. grandpa

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

nomadic - place - snow - tents - tons

In Northern Siberia, some students have their classes in [1]
The tents are on the ice and [2] Many people in the North of
Siberia are [3] This means that they don't live in one
[4]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie with fruit and ice! I use it for making milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make delicious soups, too. Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes. Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine. Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can heat food, too!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The blender is a kitchen
a. desk b. room c. appliance d. soup
- I'll make a smoothie with fruit and
a. ice b. face c. mouth d. head
- There are blenders made of
a. paper b. plastic c. stone d. blade

B. Answer the following questions.

- What happens if people have a vaccine?
.....
- Who was Jonas Salk?
.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser loves his grandma. [.....]
2. Mayar is Asser's sister. [.....]
3. Asser was worried about the concert. [.....]
4. Asser doesn't love music. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. What is a sensory garden ?
.....
2. Did Asser and Shady have fun in the park ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali is very rich, so he borrows money from others.
a. always b. usually c. never d. often
2. When you go to the beach, a sun hat.
a. took b. takes c. take d. taking
3. a sunny day, I play outside with my friends.
a. In b. At c. On d. With
4. If it hot tomorrow, I will make smoothie.
a. is b. was c. are d. does
5. I think we need to clean the kitchen.
a. up b. down c. on d. under
6. If I put food in the fridge, it will cold.
a. be b. is c. are d. were

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. brother - like - painting - My - doesn't.
.....
2. The students - clothes - their - aprons - over - put on.
.....
3. lessons - have - every - We - day - seven.
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

"A school show"

Guiding elements :

acting - stage - the play - decorate - acrobat - photos

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Hassan Fathy was a famous architect.
a. Egyptian b. Indian c. French d. English
- Hassan Fathy was born in
a. Alexandria b. Cairo c. Tanta d. Suez
- Hassan Fathy's father was a
a. police officer b. farmer c. doctor d. nurse
- Hassan Fathy was very good at
a. English b. science c. math d. Arabic

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

meals - sharpen - attention - money - care

Fatma : Hello Noha, is this your cat ?

Noha : Yes, it is. It is called Mishmesh.

Fatma : I like cats, but I don't know how I [1] for them.

Noha : Cats need a lot of [2] to feel safe.

Fatma : When do they eat ?

Noha : They like small [3] at different times in the day.

Fatma : What equipment does a cat need ?

Noha : A cat needs a scratch post to [4] its claws.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name's Dalia. I'm eleven and I live in Alexandria. I go to school at Alex Modern school. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm a quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family !

I'm keen on walking with my family and friends. The countryside near where I live is really amazing. I like photography. I like taking photos of all beautiful things I see in the countryside. I also love listening to music from my country and all over the world. As well as this I like sports. I play volleyball at my local club and we have games about once a month. I think a lot about the future and I think I'd like to be a dentist like my dad.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The text is mainly about
a. Alexandria b. Alex Modern School
c. sports d. Dalia
- The underlined expression keen on means
a. far from b. different to c. interested in d. worried about
- is from Dalia's favorite hobbies.
a. Chess b. Photography c. Reading d. Tennis

B. Read and answer the questions.

- What is Dalia's fathers job ?
.....

5. What does Dalia look like ?
.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mrs Eman is Asser's teacher. [.....]
2. The children stayed at grandma's house until the evening. [.....]
3. Asser liked to play the guitar. [.....]
4. Mrs Azza gave Asser a Braille book. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who was waiting for the children at the school gate ?
.....

2. What did Mrs Azza give Mayar ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If you put food in the fridge, it cold.
a. is b. will be c. is being d. was
2. If you mix blue and yellow, you green.
a. get b. gets c. got d. getting
3. When you go for a walk, you can outdoor art.
a. find b. found c. finds d. finding
4. Have you to India ?
a. been b. being c. be d. were
5. I really enjoy time outside with my friends in summer.
a. to spend b. spending c. spent d. spend
6. If I do something creative, I happy.
a. feel b. feeling c. felt d. feels

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. children – All – learn – at – school – should – Arabic.
.....

2. about – like – do – What – your – you – bedroom ?
.....

3. photos, – taking – you – After – can – edit – them.
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

"Caring for your pet"

Guiding elements :

cat – feed – kind – drink – place – save
.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Hazem and his friend went to the Pyramids and a lot of photos there.
a. took b. visited c. climbed d. rode
- They rode on a rollercoaster in the
a. palace b. souks c. museum d. theme park
- They had lunch at
a. class b. a restaurant c. room d. garden
- Hazem promised to his friend in Cairo.
a. play b. drink c. visit d. put

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

about - me - opinion - that - think

- Ali : Mom, I'd really like to understand English better.
 Mom : What do you [1] about speaking English all day with me ?
 Ali : I don't know Mom. In my [2], it might be difficult.
 Mom : What [3] speaking English at dinner ?
 Ali : To [4], that's a much better idea.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Birthdays are celebrated differently all over the world. In Egypt, we make delicious cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. Most children get presents from their parents and friends. In the USA and Britain, presents are given not only to children, but also to adults. People also give each other birthday cards. In China, it's usual for people to eat peaches and long noodles on their birthdays because they think that food gives them a long life.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- In countries, presents are given to adults.
a. three b. four c. two d. five
- In China, long and peaches can give people a long life.
a. noodles b. pineapples c. tomatoes d. lemon
- In Egypt, we make cakes for children.
a. bad b. delicious c. small d. short

B. Answer the following questions.

- Why do Egyptians put candles on their birthday cakes ?
.....

- What do children get from their parents ?
.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

- 1. Asser's grandma takes Mayar and Asser to her house after school. [.....]
- 2. Shady and Asser didn't go to the park together. [.....]
- 3. A sensory garden is a place where you can study. [.....]
- 4. Mayar was very happy with the sensory garden. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

- 1. Why did Asser's parents have muddy boots ?
.....
- 2. Who is Mrs. Azza ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. If I go to bed late, I wake up in the morning.
a. will b. could c. can't d. are
- 2. When you go to the beach, a sun hat.
a. took b. take c. taking d. taken
- 3. I always tidy my room on weekends.
a. on b. up c. in d. under
- 4. makes me healthy and strong.
a. Swim b. Swimming c. Swam d. Swum
- 5. Dina asked me I had a mobile phone.
a. what b. but c. if d. so
- 6. If it's hot tomorrow, I make a smoothie.
a. would b. will c. have d. has

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1. bedroom - Sometimes - my - messy - is - brother's.
.....
- 2. phone - looks at - her - never - Amal - to bed - before - she goes.
.....
- 3. on - Dalia - bus - usually - book - the - her - reads.
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

"Your school"

Guiding elements :

- very big - amazing - laboratory • science - equipment - playground
 - open area - sit on the garden - plans • computer - study easily - classroom
-
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Younis is learning to use to make animations.
 a. books b. computers c. mobiles d. clocks
2. At the moment, Younis is making a/an with moving pictures.
 a. story b. email c. blog d. letter
3. Younis goes to the club every week.
 a. art b. sports c. music d. history
4. Younis plays the and he'll be in a concert next week.
 a. guitar b. violin c. piano d. drum

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

outside - tall - liquid - born - sculpture

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was [1] in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world. Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous [2] by Anish Kapoor. It stands [3] the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. The sculpture is about 13 meters [4] It's made of 73 stainless steel balls.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In Egypt, some classrooms have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school! The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green roofs for school in Egypt. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air. That means that they are great for the environment. The project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden. They learn about which plants grow well in the hot, dry weather. In 2017, classes at one school started going to their green roofs for lessons. People at the project thought this was an amazing idea! In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Green roofs the air.
 a. warm b. boil c. pollute d. cool
2. The underlined word "They" refers to
 a. teachers b. students c. green roofs d. people
3. People at the project built their first classroom on the roof in
 a. 2023 b. 2017 c. 2019 d. 2022

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What does the Shagara at School project design ?

5. Why is the project good for students and teachers ?

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

- 1. Mrs Azza gave Asser a Braille book. [.....]
- 2. Asser practiced the guitar for the school concert. [.....]
- 3. Asser's parents were making a playground with a sensory garden. [.....]
- 4. Mayar has dance classes in the evening. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

- 1. What was Asser doing when he saw his dad's muddy shovel ?
.....
- 2. Why did grandma come to pick Asser and Mayar up ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. If it is cold, a jacket.
a. wears b. wearing c. wear d. wore
- 2. Nadine loves performing stage.
a. into b. on c. in d. of
- 3. If my hair wet, I will use a hairdryer.
a. gets b. getting c. to get d. will get
- 4. Fareeda has put her clothes and now her room is tidy.
a. up b. away c. down d. in
- 5. I don't have a bike. I cycle to school.
a. always b. often c. usually d. never
- 6. She asked what grandma and Dalia after school.
a. does b. do c. did d. doing

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1. boils - , it - When - heat - you - water.
.....
- 2. never - am - late - for - I - school.
.....
- 3. see - Recycling - Room - What - visitors - can - the - in ?
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

"Your bedroom"

Guiding elements :

comfortable - computer - desk - homework - read - games

.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Noha and Hesham are talking about a
a. sport b. subject c. competition d. restaurant
- They have to enter a project competition.
a. bad b. creative c. ugly d. terrible
- Noha's favorite activity is
a. reading b. writing c. fishing d. painting
- She always feels when she's painting.
a. sad b. angry c. bad d. happy

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

cakes - birthday - organizing - surprise - balloons

It's Grandma's [1] next week and we're [2] a special party for her. If we don't tell her, it'll be a big [3] Mum is going to make special [4] We are going to help her.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

If we were all the same, life would be **boring**. In Mrs Mona's class, Asser is different to his friends because he's tall and he has brown eyes. He's good at science, but his friend Seleem is good at geography.

Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is straight and he wears glasses. Injy has curly hair and wears braces to help her teeth get straight. The important thing is that we look after each other. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The opposite of "**boring**" is
a. interesting b. sad c. bad d. bored
- Asser is tall and has eyes.
a. blue b. green c. brown d. yellow
- Injy doesn't have
a. straight hair b. curly hair c. teeth d. braces

B. Answer the following questions.

- What does Waleed wear?
.....
- What subject is Asser good at?
.....

4 The Reader**A. Read and write YES or NO.**

- Mayar has a new book. [.....]

2. Mrs Azza gave Asser a Braille book. [.....]
 3. Asser and Mayar made a cake at Grandma's house. [.....]
 4. Asser found muddy boots on the seat of the car. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Asser go to the garage ?

2. What did grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar ?

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If it is cold, a jacket.
 a. wear b. wore c. wears d. is wearing
2. When dad waters the plants, they die.
 a. isn't b. doesn't c. don't d. never
3. Our teacher told us that he in Cairo.
 a. is b. was c. are d. had
4. How do you go swimming ? - Once a week.
 a. high b. often c. many d. long
5. Lily often games with her friends.
 a. plays b. is played c. play d. playing
6. I eat lunch in the restaurant. I have it with my family at home every day.
 a. always b. never c. sometimes d. ever

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. on - Dalia - the bus - usually - book - her - read - Does ?

2. rains, - If - flowers - grow - will - the - it.

3. you - Who - lunchtime - eat - do - at - with ?

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

"My school"

Guiding elements :

classes - English - teacher - friends

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Anish Kapoor studied in Britain.
a. drawing b. art c. math d. music
- Kapoor makes very pieces of art for public places.
a. small b. tiny c. large d. terrible
- Tall Tree and the Eye is about meters tall.
a. 13 b. 3 c. 30 d. 33
- Tall Tree and the Eye is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or
a. ovals b. spheres c. squares d. pins

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

express - old - exhibition - poem - ages

Enter our fun new competition and show us how creative you are! We want children between the [1] of five and fifteen to send us their creative works. Your works will appear in a big art [2] in the city museum. There are so many different ways you can [3] yourself. You could send us a painting, a photo, a [4] , or a story. Or why not try something new ?

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It's the year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works all day and does all their chores. However, on this day, all the Bills suddenly broke down.

One family in Alexandria looked very worried, but the daughter said "We'll just do some chores ourselves. We'll go on the internet to learn. That's what Granddad told me people used to do." The family started trying to learn things from videos. They learned how to use kitchen appliances and fix things!

Luckily, a computer engineer solved the problem the next day, and all the Bills started working again. Life was normal again. However, humans start to work too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- This story happens
a. in the past b. in the present c. in the future d. nowadays
- The main idea of this reading text is about
a. Bills do all the chores b. Bills do the hard work
c. We can't live without robot d. Robots and humans are important
- When the Bill robot breaks down, the family go on the to learn.
a. engineers b. movies c. internet d. books

B. Answer the following questions.

- Why will humans have easy lives in the future ?
.....

5. Why did all the Bill robots start working again ?
.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

- 1. Asser found muddy boots on the seats of the car. [.....]
- 2. Mom and dad learned Braille when Mayar was a baby. [.....]
- 3. Asser will play the guitar in the music club. [.....]
- 4. Mrs. Azza gave Asser a Braille book. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

- 1. What is the favorite thing for Mayar in the sensory garden ?
.....
- 2. How did Asser feel about the concert at the end of the story ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. If it is cold, a jacket.
a. wears b. wear c. would wear d. will wear
- 2. If she hurries, she catch the train. I am not sure.
a. won't b. would c. may d. can
- 3. I don't have a bike. I walk to school. I cycle to school.
a. never b. sometimes c. often d. usually
- 4. Please, hang your clothes to make your room better.
a. away b. in c. out d. up
- 5. My dad said that he a nice movie the day before.
a. can watch b. watched c. will watch d. watches
- 6. Our teacher asked we could all see the whiteboard.
a. that b. to c. if d. not to

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1. roofs - Green - great - are - the - environment - for.
.....
- 2. activity - designing - My - is - clothes - favorite.
.....
- 3. don't - people - Nomadic - one place - in - live.
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

The school library

Guiding elements :

reading - important - information - books - librarian - borrow
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. What does Omar often take ?
 a. The kitten b. The puppy c. The ball d. The car
2. When does Sara feed the kitten ?
 a. Every day b. Every Sunday c. Every Monday d. Every Friday
3. What does Sara like watching ?
 a. Cats b. Dogs c. Comic books d. Cartoons
4. What do Omar and Sara always play together ?
 a. Games b. Tennis c. Chess d. Music

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

work - windows - play - hall - comfortable

Reham has got a hard working mum. Reham's mom works in a bank in her town. The bank has a big hall with [1] chairs. It has shiny floors and tall [2] The bank is open from eight to three o'clock afternoon. Reham thinks her mom is lucky to [3] in such a nice place. Sometimes, Reham goes with her dad to pick her mom up from work. They wait in the [4] until her mum is ready to leave.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are many kinds of bears in different places. Some bears live in warm places, like sun bears. Some bears live in cold places, like polar bears. Bears have different colours, too. They can be white, brown, or black. Some bears eat plants. Some bears eat animals. Bears have long noses with strong smell, They have claws and fur, too. Baby bears are called cubs. When it gets cold, bears sleep in dens for the winter. Dens can be in trees or caves. When they are sleeping all winter, it is called **hibernation**. Bears do not eat when they hibernate.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Bears have colors.
 a. white b. different c. black d. brown
2. The baby bear is named a
 a. club b. cup c. cub d. cob
3. Dens are for bears.
 a. homes b. seas c. rivers d. cars

B. Answer the following questions.

4. How are sun bears and polar bears different ?

.....

5. What does "**hibernation**" mean ?

.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Shady is Asser's cousin. [.....]
2. Grandma's coming at school was a nice surprise. [.....]
3. Mayar wanted to listen to the radio in the car. [.....]
4. Asser was thinking about his school concert. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. What were Asser's parents doing on the other side of the park ?
.....
2. Why didn't Asser's parents tell him about the sensory garden ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I help my mother the kitchen.
a. hang up b. clean up c. put out d. pick up
2. Nadia loves performing stage.
a. on b. in c. at d. of
3. He always arrives on time. He is late.
a. usually b. often c. never d. sometimes
4. If she late, we won't go to the cinema.
a. comes b. come c. came d. will come
5. Lina said that the party beautiful.
a. was b. is c. has d. am
6. Ali is the boy in our team.
a. tall b. tallest c. taller d. taller than

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. make - you - What - can - lids - with ?
.....
2. great - for - roofs - Green - are - the environment.
.....
3. a wheelchair - uses - Amal - because - can't - she - walk.
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

School clubs

Guiding elements :

art - cooking - drama - sports - music

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- You can buy plants from supermarkets and florists.
a. sunny b. indoor c. cold d. outdoor
- It might be best to buy from a
a. mall b. florist
c. supermarket d. garden center
- Assistants at the garden center can give you some useful
a. time b. money c. seeds d. advice
- Make sure you know what your is called.
a. house b. seeds c. plant d. flower

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

cleans - school - roof - tower - environment

Ghada : Did you read the new poster in the school hall ?

Rabab : No, Ghada. What's it about ?

Ghada : It's about the green [1] at school.

Rabab : What's the green roof ?

Ghada : It's a garden on the top of the [2] building.

Rabab : Why are they making it at school ?

Ghada : It's very good for the [3]

Rabab : How is it good for the environment ?

Ghada : It [4] and cools the air.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

If we are all the same, life would be boring. In Mrs. Mona's class, Asser is different to his friends because he's tall and he has green eyes. He's good at science, but his friend Seleem is good at geography. Seleem's hair is straight, but Walid's hair is curly and he wears glasses. Injy has curly hair and wears braces to help her teeth get straight. The important thing is that we look after each other. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. It's good that everyone is different. But everyone is equally important.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The best title to the text is " ".
a. Different clothes b. We're all different
c. Our community d. Science class
- The opposite of the underlined word "boring" is
a. different b. safe c. interesting d. straight
- Injy has hair.
a. straight b. curly c. brown d. black

B. Answer the following questions.

- What is Seleem good at ?
.....

5. Why does Injy wear braces ?
.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian footballer. [.....]
2. Fathy's houses have Egyptian features. [.....]
3. Fathy was creative and he loved drawing and building. [.....]
4. Fathy built New Gournia that was his last, smallest project. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who was Hassan Fathy ?
.....

2. What kind of bricks did he use to build his houses ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When the sun, the plants make their food.
a. rise b. rises c. rising d. to rise
2. Honey is good your health.
a. of b. into c. on d. for
3. He walks to school. He always takes the bus.
a. never b. always c. sometimes d. usually
4. Playing football makes happy.
a. I b. me c. our d. mine
5. Sarah asked how they get to school.
a. would b. will c. are d. can
6. What is the difficult sport ?
a. more b. most c. good d. bad

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. look - Nomadic - after - people - reindeer.
.....

2. wood - The - is - of - sculpture - made.
.....

3. go - school - How - he - to - does ?
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

Green roofs

Guiding elements :

garden - environment - nature - calm

.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are people in my family.
 a. fifteen b. five c. fifty d. forty
2. The two sisters have the age.
 a. same b. some c. different d. whole
3. The other sister wants to be a/an
 a. gardener b. engineer c. doctor d. actress
4. My father is a
 a. teacher b. doctor c. vet d. farmer

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

interesting - cameras - sculptures - tourists - Egyptian

I went to Cairo last week. I went by bus. I went with my friends. We took many things with us such as [1], mobiles and food. We met many [2] there. We visited the [3] Museum. We could see many items there. We saw the [4] which the ancient Egyptian craftsmen made. It was really an amazing visit. We were happy.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A farmer said to his wife, "You are lazy. You waste your time." The wife was angry at the words of her husband. "You are wrong. Stay at home tomorrow. I'll go to the field. I'll do your work there. Will you do my work at home here?" The farmer said happily, "Very well. I'll do your work back at home." The wife said, "Milk the cows, feed the chickens and wash the dishes".

The woman went to the field. The farmer stayed at home. He tried to milk the cow, but he couldn't. He received a good kick. He went to feed the chickens. He forgot to look after his children. The wife came back home from the field. The farmer looked at his wife and said, "I'm sorry. You are not lazy."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The farmer thought that his wife was at first.
 a. happy b. lazy c. active d. bad
2. The farmer the cow.
 a. milked b. killed c. couldn't milk d. fed
3. The underlined word "well" means
 a. strong b. weak c. hungry d. good

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What did the farmer forget to do ?

5. Who do you think is better, the farmer or the farmer's wife ? Why ?

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser saw his grandma waiting at the school gate. [.....]
2. Mayar's teacher came to talk to her mom. [.....]
3. The children stayed at grandma's house until the afternoon. [.....]
4. The fountain is Mayar's favorite thing in the park. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did grandma come to pick Asser and Mayar up ?
.....
2. What did grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If you want to pass the exam, hard.
a. study b. studied c. studying d. studies
2. I can see the sky shining
a. brightly b. bright c. clear d. clarity
3. He was born India in 1954.
a. on b. at c. from d. in
4. do you live ? - In Samalout.
a. Who b. When c. Where d. What
5. She loves performing stage.
a. on b. in c. at d. to
6. She like eating unhealthy food.
a. don't b. aren't c. isn't d. doesn't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. activities - painting - My - and - favorite - are - reading.
.....
2. you - show - enjoy - Did - the - school ?
.....
3. help - Don't - you - worry, - let - me.
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

"Celebrating my birthday"

Guiding elements :

invite - friends - streamers - fireworks - presents - cookies

.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ramy has got brothers and a sister.
 a. three b. four c. no d. two
2. Ramy's father is a
 a. teacher b. nurse c. doctor d. vet
3. They went to the zoo by
 a. bus b. car c. train d. taxi
4. They came back home in the
 a. morning b. evening c. afternoon d. night

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

blender - buy - easy - thanked - bad

Online shopping has become very popular. You can [1] anything online. I like online shopping. It's [2] and quick. It saves time. Some people don't like to buy things online as they think they may get the wrong thing, or the delivery may take a long time. Last week, I ordered a [3] as a present for my mother. The price wasn't expensive. The blender looked good in the kitchen and the delivery was quick. When my mother used the blender, she [4] me a lot.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Ali. I'm twelve years old. I'm in grade six. I live in Egypt. It's a great country. It's in the north east of Africa. Cairo is the capital city of Egypt. It's a big city. The Egyptians are kind and friendly. The weather is fine in Egypt. It's hot and sunny in summer. It's cold and rainy in winter. Egypt has a lot of monuments. You can visit the Pyramids in Giza. You can go swimming and diving in Hurghada. It's a nice city. You can stay at hotels there. You can see ancient temples in Luxor. Also, you can visit the High Dam in Aswan. You can see the Nile. It is the longest river in the world. Really, Egypt is a nice place to visit.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about
 a. Egypt b. Aswan c. Pyramids d. the Nile
2. The underlined word "there" refers to
 a. Aswan b. Giza c. Hurghada d. Cairo
3. Egypt is in the east of Africa.
 a. west b. north c. south d. east

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What is the weather like in Egypt ?

5. Where does Ali live ?

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser's grandma was waiting at the school gate. [.....]
2. Asser found muddy boots in the car. [.....]
3. Mrs Azza gave Asser a Braille book. [.....]
4. Mayar wanted to listen to the radio. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did Asser go with Shady ?
.....
2. Why did Asser go to the garage ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If you are free, you can us.
a. visits b. visited c. visit d. visiting
2. you go to school, take your school bag.
a. What b. Where c. Who d. When
3. If I have enough money, I buy a car.
a. would b. will c. don't d. am
4. My sister mopped the juice on the floor.
a. of b. out c. up d. down
5. You will sick if you eat a lot of chocolate.
a. be b. was c. being d. are
6. What will happen if you study hard ?
a. doesn't b. don't c. isn't d. aren't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. and - Vegetables - are - fruits - good - health - for.
.....
2. books - love - I - reading - comic.
.....
3. milkshake - She - a blender - to - uses - make.
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

"A trip to Alexandria"

Guiding elements :

last week - family - car - beach - zoo - castle - happy - lunch - came back

.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My class worked on a project last week.
 a. music b. pottery c. farm d. sports
2. I wanted to make a
 a. bowl b. spoon c. house d. bag
3. We put on over our clothes.
 a. hats b. shirts c. dresses d. aprons
4. When I put my on the wheel, it went fast.
 a. pen b. chair c. clay d. box

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

share - sporty - homework - apartment - bedroom

My name is Hany. We moved into a new [1] a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new [2] I love my new room. I [3] it with my brother, Adam. We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our [4] in our bedroom.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Amira. I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance. I use it for making milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make delicious soups, too. Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine saved millions of lives.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amira thinks the is the best kitchen appliance.
 a. medicine b. milkshake c. blender d. scientist
2. Dr Jonas Salk used a blender to make a
 a. kitchen b. soup c. vaccine d. school
3. Amira's mom uses a blender to make delicious
 a. soups b. medicine c. appliance d. clothes

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What does Amira use the blender for ?

5. When did Dr Jonas Salk make the vaccine ?

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mayar was carrying a game. [.....]
2. Asser saw his grandma at the school gate. [.....]

3. Asser's mom is busy. [.....]
4. Mom and dad were sad to see Mayar's new book. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who was Mrs Azza ?
.....
2. Where did grandma take Asser and Mayar ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If it's hot tomorrow, I'll swimming.
a. go b. goes c. going d. went
2. When I meet my friends, we video games.
a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
3. Your clothes are everywhere, please hang them
a. on b. out c. in d. up
4. Mazen come to your party if you don't invite him.
a. aren't b. won't c. weren't d. am not
5. He doesn't like rice. He eats it.
a. always b. never c. often d. usually
6. She is nervous when she is stage.
a. for b. on c. of d. next

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. on - juice - There - table - is - the.
.....
2. swimming - sea - in - We - the - love.
.....
3. is - painting - at - She - good.
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

"Your house"

Guiding elements :

new - bedroom - friends - share - brother - homework
- read books - listen to music - happy

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It was a day.
 a. happy b. normal c. easy d. strange
2. They had a/an outage.
 a. power b. music c. video d. audio
3. They were looking at the whiteboard.
 a. black b. interactive c. lazy d. normal
4. Suddenly all the information
 a. appeared b. arrived c. disappeared d. cleared

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

messy - lump - bowl - sculptor - pottery

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a [1] of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a [2] First, the teacher showed us how to use a [3] wheel. Then it was our turn. We put aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got [4]

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Lina lay awake, listening to the wind and rain. The storm lasted all night. Then, as the sun came up, she heard a crash. She ran to the window. "What was that?" asked her sister, Sarah. Lina looked at the river near their house. "Oh no!" she said. "The bridge has collapsed!"

The village where Lina and Sarah lived was small and had steep mountains all around it. The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to the town, with the school, stores, doctors and the sports center.

They ran to the kitchen to see their parents. "I've just listened to the radio," said Mom. "They said that the storm would stop soon. Then we can see what has happened".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about a
 a. river b. bridge c. boat d. school
2. The underlined word "collapsed" means
 a. found out b. brought up c. fallen down d. got up
3. Who was listening to the radio?
 a. Dad b. Sarah c. Lina d. Mom

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Describe the village where they lived.

5. Why was the bridge very important?

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. When Asser saw Grandma, he smiled and hugged her. [.....]
2. The shovel was covered in ice. [.....]

3. Mayar wanted to listen to the radio in the car. [.....]
 4. There is a fountain in the sensory garden. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who was Mrs Azza ?

2. What were Asser's parents doing on the other side of the park ?

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If you mix yellow and red, you orange.
 a. made b. makes c. making d. make
2. When the sun, the plants make their food.
 a. rise b. rises c. rising d. to rise
3. Who does he eat lunch ?
 a. when b. on c. with d. in
4. If I have enough money, I buy a new car.
 a. will b. has c. was d. am
5. Can you put the garbage ?
 a. down b. on c. up d. out
6. Mazen come to your party if you don't invite him.
 a. didn't b. won't c. don't d. isn't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - painting - at - She - good - not.

2. with - you - can - lids - What - make ?

3. to fix - the robot - I - my - programmed - car.

7 Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

Write an email about "Green roofs" to your friend Anas. Your friend's email address is anas@gmail.com. Your name is Hani and your email address is hani@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements : gardens - environment - nature - calm

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع

Day 1

A. Listen and choose the correct answer :

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world.

B. Listen and choose the correct answer :

We have different families so we are different. In my family, there are five people. I have two sisters. They are twins. They have the same age. One of them wants to be a teacher. The other sister wants to be a doctor like my father. My father is a famous doctor and he helps many sick people.

C. Listen and choose the correct answer :

My name is Mazen. I'm in primary six. I love my friends at school very much. We are not the same. Everyone is different. Some of us are good at art and others are good at music. I'm tall with brown eyes. Seleem is short with green eyes. I have straight hair and brown eyes, but Yara has curly hair and blue eyes. It's good that everyone is different.

1 Cairo Governorate

Ain Shams Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom! I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother Maged. My favorite thing about it is that we have space for our hobbies and for our friends!

2 Giza Governorate

El Warraq Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name's Aya. I've just started a new club. I think cooking club is great. Last week, we made special cookies for Eid Al-Fitr. This week, we're going to make lemon cake. It's going to be fun.

3 Alexandria Governorate

West Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

Electricity is very important in our life. We use it for lighting our houses. We need lights in the evening. We can use it in our kitchens. Blenders and refrigerators are all appliances which need electricity to work. We also use electricity in transportation. Some people have electric cars. Bus stations and airports need electricity, too.

4 Qalyoubia Governorate

English Supervision

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ali and Noha were on school vacation at home with their parents. One morning, Ali was in the living

room, playing with his new kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small hole in the wall. Ali put his hand through the hole to get her but all he could feel was some paper. He pulled the paper - it was very old. Ali felt very curious.

5 Sharkia Governorate

East Zagazig Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop! I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening, too.

6 Menofia Governorate

Ashmoon Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian architect. He was very good at math. He was born in Alexandria in 1900. When he was eight, Hassan and his family moved to Cairo. His father was a police officer, but later he changed his job to become a teacher.

7 Gharbia Governorate

Tanta Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

Last week Hazem visited his friend in Giza. They went to the Pyramids and took a lot of photos there. They went to the theme park and rode on a rollercoaster. In the afternoon, they had lunch at a restaurant. They had a nice time together. Hazem promised to visit his friend in Cairo.

8 Dakahlia Governorate

West El Mansoura Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Younis. I'm in grade six. I think using computers is important for our life. I'm learning to use computers to make animations. At the moment, I'm making a story with moving pictures. Moving pictures can tell a great story. I also go to the music club every week. I play the guitar and I'll be in a concert next week.

9 El Beheira Governorate

El Nubaria Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

Noha and Hesham are talking about a competition. They have to enter a creative project competition. Noha's favorite activity is painting. She always feels happy when she's painting. Hesham prefers making things with his hands. His favorite activity is making pottery.

10 Damietta Governorate

English Supervision

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to Britain, UK to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world. Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres.

11 Port Said Governorate

North Port Said Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

Omar is a good boy. He is in grade six. He has a nice sister. She is called Sara. They have got a puppy and a kitten. Omar often takes his puppy for a walk. Sara feeds the kitten every day. Omar's favorite hobby is reading. He reads comic books. Sara likes watching cartoons. In the evening after dinner, Omar and Sara always play chess together.

12 Ismailia Governorate

El Qassaseen Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets, florists, and garden centers. It might be best to buy from a garden center as the assistants know how to look after the plants and they can give you some useful advice. Make sure you know what your plant is called so you can find out more about it.

13 Minya Governorate

Samalout Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

We have different families so we are different. In my family, there are five people. I have two sisters. They are twins. They have the same age. One of them wants to be a teacher. The other sister wants to be a doctor like my father. My father is a famous doctor and he helps many sick people.

14 Sohag Governorate

English Supervision

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Ramy. I live in a big apartment with my family. I have got two brothers and a sister. My father is a vet and I'm interested in animals. Last week, we went to the zoo by car. We saw a lot of different animals. We came back home in the evening.

15 Aswan Governorate

Kom Ombo Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl! First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy.

16 Luxor Governorate

Esna Educational Directorate

• Listen and choose the correct answer.

It was a strange day, actually. We had a power outage! My class and I were looking at the interactive whiteboard when suddenly all the information disappeared.